# **Russian FSC National Initiative**

# RUSSIAN NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FOREST STEWARDSHIP COUNCIL STANDARD

FSC code: <FSC-STD-RUS-01 200X-XX Russian national framework standard ENG>

Forest Management Standard of Non-governmental Organization Version 4.0

Russian National Framework Forest Stewardship Council Standard. <FSC-STD-RUS-01 200X-XX Russian national framework standard ENG>. Eds. M. L. Karpachevskiy and V. A. Chuprov. Moscow: Russian FSC National Initiative, 2007.

- © Russian FSC National Initiative, 2007
- © Regional Non-governmental Organization Society for Assisting Development of National Voluntary Forest Certification, 2007

This document is developed by the Russian FSC National Initiative and Regional Non-governmental Organization *Society for Assisting Development of National Voluntary Forest Certification*.

Any reproduction in full or in part of this standard must mention the title and credit the publishers as the copyright owners.

No part of this standard may be reproduced or copied without the permission of the publishers.

#### **ACKNOWLEDGEMENT**

The development of this standard has required coordinated efforts of many people. The following persons played the key role in the development of the document:

#### **Coordinating Board of the Russian National FSC Initiative:**

- V. A. Chuprov, Greenpeace Russia
- M. L. Karpachevskiy, Charitable Foundation Biodiversity Conservation Center
- A. V. Loginov
- M. V. Malkevich
- V. L. Polyakov / Ye. A. Merkulov, Central Committee of the Russian Forest Industries Trade Union
- A. E. Ryzhkov, Specialized Research Center for FSC Voluntary Forest Certification at the Moscow State Forest University
- V. V. Soldatov, Krasnoyarsk Regional Working Group
- N. V. Strakhova, Pricebatch (Altay-UK) Ltd.
- R. V. Sungurov, Northern Center for Forest Certification

#### **Members of the Russian National FSC Initiative:**

- Yu. A. Pautov, Silver Taiga Foundation
- N. E. Prokazin
- V. V. Dmitriev, WWF Russia
- V. V. Tolmachev, Pricebatch (Altay UK) Ltd.
- A. A. Volkov, Promles
- N. A. Zubov, Socio-Ecological Union of Krasnoyarsk Kray
- V. E. Nikolaev, Moscow State Forest University
- T. V. Pavlyuchenko, Arun Sym Community
- S. V. Orlov, Ilim Pulp
- M. S. Tysyachnyuk, Center for Independent Sociological Research

# Participants of testing in Moscow Oblast (2001), Krasnoyarsk Kray (2002), and Primorskiy Kray (2002):

- E. M. Belyakova, Greenpeace Russia
- A. Yu. Grigoriev, International Social Ecological Union
- G. –J. Droste, GFA-Terra Systems
- V. A. Zhuravlev, Yeniseyskiy Leskhoz, Krasnoyarsk Kray
- M. A. Katanaeva, Siberian State Technological University
- A. A. Krylov, Klinskiy Leskhoz, Moscow Oblast
- E. I. Orleneva, WWF Russia
- K. A. Pakhorukova, International Social Ecological Union
- E. A. Shevlyakov, Lesosibirsk Sawmill No. 1
- V. F. Shcherbakov, Terneyles
- T. Specht, GFA-Terra Systems
- A. Yu. Yaroshenko, Greenpeace Russia

#### **National Office of the Forest Stewardship Council:**

- A. V. Ptichnikov
- As well as M. L. Kreindlin (Greenpeace Russia), T. O. Yanitskaya (WWF Russia), A. A. Kulyasova, I. P. Kulyasov, M. G. Kuchinskiy, M. A. Podvezennaya and K. Harris (Taiga Rescue Network)

# CONTENT

INTRODUCTION	4
PART 1. STRUCTURE AND CONTENT	6
1. Specification of Scope	6
2. Standard Hierarchical Framework	6
3. Content	6
4. Scale and Intensity of Forest Management	7
5. Numbering	7
6. Translation	7
7. Standard Effective Date	7
PART 2. NOTES	
8. Certification Decision Making	8
9. Re-structuring the Standard for Use in the Forest	9
PART 3. CHECKLIST FOR COMPLIANCE WITH THE RUSSIAN NATIONAL	
FRAMEWORK FSC STANDARD	
PRINCIPLE 1: COMPLIANCE WITH LAWS AND FSC PRINCIPLES	10
PRINCIPLE 2: TENURE AND USE RIGHTS AND RESPONSIBILITIES	13
PRINCIPLE 3: INDIGENOUS PEOPLES' RIGHTS	
PRINCIPLE 4: COMMUNITY RELATIONS AND WORKER'S RIGHTS	19
PRINCIPLE 5: BENEFITS FROM THE FOREST	24
PRINCIPLE 6: ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT	
PRINCIPLE 7: MANAGEMENT PLAN	
PRINCIPLE 8: MONITORING AND ASSESSMENT	
PRINCIPLE 9: MAINTENANCE OF HIGH CONSERVATION VALUE FORESTS	50
PRINCIPLE 10: PLANTATIONS	55
ANNEXES	
Annex A. Basic Laws and Administrative Regulations in Forest Management and Environn	
Protection	
Annex B. Multilateral Environment Agreements and Basic Conventions of the International	
Labor Organization Ratified by Russia	
Annex C. Legal Framework for Protection of Rare, Threatened, and Endangered Species of	
Plants, Animals and Fungi	
Red Data Book of the Russian Federation	
Regional Red Data Books	
Identification and Protection of Habitats of Rare, Threatened and Endangered Species of	
Plants, Animals and Fungi	
Identification and Protection of Key Stand Elements during Harvesting	
Preservation and Maintenance of Ecological Functions and Values during Harvesting	
References on Red Data Books	
Annex D. Protected Nature Areas	
Annex E. High Conservation Value Forests	
Categories of HCVF	
HCVF, Representative Samples of Existing Ecosystems and Ecological Networks	
Management of HCVF	
Monitoring of HCVF	
References on HCVF	
Annex F. Indigenous Peoples	
Annex G. Glossary	
Annex H. Certification Terms	109
Annex I. List of Indicators Non-compliance to which Should Mean that an FSC Certificate	110
Cannot Be Issued (List of Major Non-compliances for Certification)	110

#### INTRODUCTION

FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship (2002) are an internationally recognized standard for responsible forest management. However, any international standard should be adapted to national or regional conditions by taking into account various legal, social and geographic conditions in which forests of different parts of the world exist. In practice, it means that it is necessary to develop, in addition to FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship, special indicators with a set of measurable means of verification to evaluate forests at a level of management unit. The FSC standard of forest stewardship can be developed for the country as a whole or for its parts (regions).

Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship along with a set of special indicators and rules on the implementation make up a FSC standard of forest stewardship.

The Standard shall be accredited by the Forest Stewardship Council. To be accredited by FSC such a standard should be developed in accordance with the procedures specified in FSC-STD-60-006 *Process for Developing FSC Forest Stewardship Standards*. The structure and content of such standard should meet the requirements of FSC specified in FSC-STD-01-001 V4-0 EN *FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship* (2002) and FSC-STD-20-002 (Version 1-0) *Structure and Content of Forest Stewardship Standards* (2004).

The Russian National Framework Standard has been developed by the National Group on Voluntary Forest Certification (in development) between 1999 and 2006. In 2006, I the Coordinating Council of the National Working Group as the Regional Non-governmental Organization Society for Assisting Development of National Voluntary Forest Certification. The .

The decision to develop the standard has been taken by the 2nd (Constituent) Conference of the National Working Group on Voluntary Forest Certification in Krasnoyarsk, 1999. In particular, the need to develop a national standard was prescribed by the Statutes of the National Working Group on Voluntary Forest Certification and the Program of the National Group and Coordinating Board. The Technical Committee of the National Group has been established to develop national interpretation of principles and criteria and other regulations. The Coordinating Board was entrusted with responsibility for coordinating the standard development.

The first version of the checklist in the FSC format was developed in 2000 based on Document 1.2 FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship (version of January 1999) and Position of Non-Governmental Organizations on Key Criteria for Sustainable Forest Stewardship in Russia adopted by the meeting of NGOs held in Pushkino, Moscow Oblast, July 11 2000.

The second version of the checklist was developed in 2001 after a broad consultative process with experts. At the same time, the decision on field testing of the standard was taken.

In early 2002, the third draft of the checklist was prepared, based on the recommendations provided by the GFA-Terra Systems certification company during the field test in Klinskiy Leskhoz (Moscow Oblast), and on comments of the FSC Secretariat. The draft checklist has been discussed and adopted at the meeting of the Coordinating Board of the National Group held in Krasnoyarsk in March 2002.

GFA-Terra Systems conducted the second and third field tests of the checklist at the Lesosibirsk Sawmill No. 1, Krasnoyarsk Kray, May 2002 and the Terneyles Company, Primorskiy Kray, October 2002. Based of the outputs of the field testing, the forth and fifth version of the checklist have been drafted. A number of Russian forest experts and auditors of GFA-Terra Systems took part in the field testing. During the development of the standard, positions and opinions of regional working groups on forest certification have been taken into account.

The Coordinating Board of the National Group held in Moscow, November 1 2002, elaborated and assumed as a basis the checklist (version 6). The decision about Principles 1–8 and 10 was adopted by consensus, while Principle 9 was adopted by voting. It was decided to continue consultation to reach consensus on the Principle 9.

In October 2003, the National Working Group on Voluntary Forest Certification developed Standard *Forest Management. Classification and Nomenclature of Attributes. Evaluation Procedure. Standard of Non-governmental Organization. Draft Final Version. Version 1* based on the checklist (version 6).

The work of a special working group and discussions at the meeting of the Coordinating Board on October 17 2003 resulted in the adoption of the new version of the Principle 9 by consensus. The final draft checklist (version of December 16 2004) was approved. The respective changes have been made to the Draft National Framework Standard Forest Management. Classification and Nomenclature of Attributes. Evaluation Procedure. Standard of Nongovernmental Organization. Draft Final Version. Version 1.

Since the Forest Stewardship Council has adopted the new content and structure for developing FSC standards – FSC-STD-20-002 (Version 1-0) *Structure and Content of Forest Stewardship Standards* (2004), the Coordinating Board developed the second version of the *Russian National Framework Forest Stewardship Council Standard. Forest Management Standard of Nongovernmental Organization. Version* 2. This version of the standard was adopted in general at the Conference of the National Working Group, May 26–27 2005, Zvenigorod, Moscow Oblast.

The framework standard specifies general requirements to forest management at the national level; establishes general rules for regional forest stewardship standards; and serves for certification of forest management in accordance with FSC procedures.

The framework standard is applicable to forest management units, forest enterprises, organizations, FSC certification companies and developers of FSC regional standards.

#### PART 1. STRUCTURE AND CONTENT

### 1. Specification of Scope

- 1.1. The Russian National Framework FSC Standard (hereinafter the National Framework Standard) is applicable to the Russian Federation as a whole.
- 1.2. The National Framework Standard specifies the general requirements to forest management at the national level, including the content of regional standards of forest stewardship, in accordance with the FSC requirements.
- 1.3. FSC regional standards (hereinafter regional standards) can be developed within the framework established by the National Framework Standard for particular regions of Russia (administrative regions or their groups). These regional standards will contain more detailed requirements to forest management by taking into account regional features.
- 1.4. Regional standards shall be harmonized with the National Framework Standard and regional standards of adjacent regions.
- 1.5. Regional standards come into effect after harmonization with the National Framework Standard and accreditation in accordance with the FSC procedures.
- 1.6. In the case a forest management unit that seeks FSC certification is located in an area which has an effective regional standard the latter shall be used for assessing the forest management.
- 1.7. If a forest management unit that seeks FSC certification is located in an area, which does not have a regional standard, the National Framework Standard shall be used to assess the forest management, although taking into account relevant regional administrative regulations.

#### 2. Standard Hierarchical Framework

2.1. The National Framework Standard is structured as a hierarchy of the FSC Principles, FSC Criteria and the associated indicators and means of verification in compliance with FSC-STD-01-001 V4-0 EN FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship (2002). The compliance with the Framework Standard shall be determined by evaluating observed performance at the forest management unit level against each indicator of the Framework Standard, and in comparison with any given performance threshold(s) or outcomes specified for indicator.

#### 3. Content

3.1. The Framework Standard includes the wording of each FSC Principle and each FSC Criterion in the same order as they occur in FSC-STD-01-001 V4-0 EN FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship (2002).

As the basis, we used the translation of FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship made by the FSC National Working Group on Voluntary Forest Certification (under development) in 1999 (FSC Principles and Criteria, Document 1.2. In: Materials of the Forest Stewardship Council, part 1, National Working Group on Voluntary Forest Certification, Moscow, 1999). Found inaccuracies have been corrected and the changes made to the authentic FSC standard by that moment have been incorporated. If the interpretation of provisions in the Russian translation is vague, we recommend using the English version of the document – FSC-STD-01-001 V4-0 EN FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship (2002).

3.2. The National Framework Standard does not use any additional criteria which are not part of the FSC-STD-01-001 V4-0 EN FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship (2002).

# 4. Scale and Intensity of Forest Management

4.1. Nowadays, there are no small private forest owners involved in forestry in Russia due to lack of private forest ownership.

Small forest areas (several hundreds of hectares) are quite rarely given into lease and only for short term. Owing to the complicated administrative procedure and forest laws, long-term lease of such small areas is economically unprofitable and it does not permit inexhaustible use of forest resource. In addition, major responsibilities for forest management in such forests are withheld by district level state forest management administration.

Due to unclear legal tools and procedures and low current demand for services and products of low intensity forest management enterprises, there is no economically successful practice of such enterprises.

In addition, the new version of the Forest Code, which will come into action in 2007, will require serious re-working of the existing forestry regulations.

4.2. Therefore, the Russian National Framework Standard does not contain any specific requirements or exclusions for small and low intensity forest management enterprises (SLIMF).

### 5. Numbering

- 5.1. The numbering of the FSC Principles and Criteria within the standard is the same as FSC-STD-01-001 V4-0 EN FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship, 2002.
- 5.2. The numbering of all indicators begins with the number of a respective FSC criterion for which the number of an indicator follows one after another. For example, the first indicator for Criterion 5.3 is 5.3.1, the second 5.3.2, etc.

#### 6. Translation

6.1. The National Framework Standard was initially developed in Russian. However, for accreditation by FSC the Standard has been submitted in English. Therefore, the English version of the accredited National Framework Standard is considered definitive in the case of any dispute.

#### 7. Standard Effective Date

- 7.1. The National Framework Standard is effective from the date of its official accreditation by the Forest Stewardship Council xx.xx.20xx.
  - 7.2. The period of validity of the National Framework Standard is xx years.
- 7.3. The 'standard effective' date which shall be 12 months after the date the standard is accredited by FSC.
- 7.4. The National Framework Standard shall be used by certification bodies for all evaluations in Russia after the date of its accreditation.
- 7.5. Existing certificate holders shall be required to be in compliance with the National Framework Standard by the 'standard effective' date, in order to hold an FSC certificate. This allows for a period of up to 12 months from the date of standard accreditation for existing certificate holders to come into compliance with the new requirements.
- 7.6. After the standard effective date the certification body shall require any non-compliance that is identified to be corrected in accordance with the normal requirements for major or minor non-compliances, as applicable.

#### PART 2. NOTES

### 8. Certification Decision Making

- 8.1. Certification bodies shall make certification decisions based on their evaluation of the forest management enterprise's compliance with each indicator specified in the National Framework Standard.
- 8.2. All non-compliances of all indicators that are identified by the certification body during an evaluation shall be recorded in the evaluation report or associated checklists.
- 8.3. Each non-compliance shall be evaluated to determine whether it constitutes a major or minor non-compliance at the level of the associated FSC criterion.
  - 8.3.1. A non-compliance may be considered minor if:
  - it is a temporary lapse, or
  - it is unusual / non-systematic, or
  - the impacts of the non-compliance are limited in their temporal and spatial scale, and
  - prompt corrective action has been taken to ensure that it will not be repeated, and
  - it does not result in a fundamental failure to achieve the objective of the relevant FSC criterion.
- 8.3.2. A non-compliance shall be considered major if, either alone or in combination with further non-compliances of other indicators, it results in, or is likely to result in a fundamental failure to achieve the objectives of the relevant FSC criterion either in the forest management unit(s) within the scale of evaluation.
  - 8.3.3. Such fundamental failure shall be indicated by with non-compliance(s), which:
  - continue over a long period of time, or
  - are repeated or systematic<sup>1</sup>, or
  - affect a wide area, or
  - are not corrected or adequately responded by the forest managers once they have been identified.

The list of indicators, non-compliance to which should mean that an FSC certificate cannot be issued (list of major non-compliances for certification), is given in *Annex I* of the current standard. However, the certification body could also recognize as a major non-compliance failure to meet requirements of other indicators.

*Notes:* Action(s) taken to correct a non-compliance may continue over a period of time (normally up to 1 (one) year, but in exceptional circumstances up to 2 (two) years). The certification body shall determine whether such action is considered adequate.

- 8.4. The certification body shall consider the impact of a non-compliance, taking account of the fragility and uniqueness of the forest resource, when evaluating whether a non-compliance results in or is likely to result in a fundamental failure to achieve the objective of the relevant FSC criterion.
- 8.5. The certification body shall not issue or re-issue a certificate to a supplier if there is a major non-compliance with the requirements of the National Framework Standard.

**Notes:** If corrective action is taken in respect of a major non-compliance, such that the non-compliance no longer fundamentally prejudices achievement of the objective of the relevant FSC criterion, the major non-compliance may be downgraded to a "minor non-compliance" and a certificate may then be issued or re-issued.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> The certification body shall determine whether the number and impact of a series of minor non-compliances identified during sampling is sufficient to demonstrate "systematic" failure (i.e. failure of management systems). If this is the case then the repeated instances of minor non-compliances shall constitute a major non-compliance.

8.6. The certification body shall suspend or withdraw a certificate if a major non-compliance is identified after the certificate has been issued, and the certificate holder does not correct the non-compliance within 3 (three) months (or, in exceptional circumstances, 6 (six) months) of the non-compliance being identified.

**Note:** Action(s) taken to correct a major non-compliance may continue over a period of which is longer than 3 months. However, action must be taken within the specified period which is sufficient to prevent new instances of non-compliance within the scope of the certification.

## 9. Re-structuring the Standard for Use in the Forest

- 9.1. The FSC-accredited National Framework Standard may be re-structured by the certification body or the FSC National Initiative in order to facilitate implementation in the forest, or to make the standard easier for stakeholders to understand.
- 9.2. Restructuring of the National Framework Standard shall have no effect on the requirements for compliance or decision making, and in the event of a complaint or appeal the complete standard, as approved by the FSC Board, shall be considered definitive.

# PART 3. CHECKLIST FOR COMPLIANCE WITH THE RUSSIAN NATIONAL FRAMEWORK FSC STANDARD

#### PRINCIPLE 1: COMPLIANCE WITH LAWS AND FSC PRINCIPLES

Forest management shall respect all applicable laws of the country in which they occur, and international treaties and agreements to which the country is a signatory, and comply with all FSC Principles and Criteria

Criteria 1.1. Forest management shall respect all national and local laws and administrative	
requirements	
Indicators	Means of verification
1.1.1. The enterprise is established or	1.1.1.1. Founding documents.
registered as prescribed by law	1.1.1.2. Interviews with enterprise managers
1.1.2. Enterprise's forest management	1.1.2.1. Documentation (including protocols of
activities are in compliance with laws <sup>2</sup>	governmental inspections); protocols of found
	violations of environment, forest and water
	legislation, charges and fees addressed to
	enterprise and reports.
	1.1.2.2. Interviews with staff <sup>3</sup> .
	1.1.2.3. Interviews with local communities <sup>4</sup> .
	1.1.2.4. Field inspection
1.1.3. The enterprise keeps up-to-date its	1.1.3.1. Electronic collection of laws and
legislative database and informs the staff of	regulations and/or subscription to official federal
relevant changes in legislation	and regional periodicals containing such
	documents.
	1.1.3.2. Evidence of informing the staff on relevant
	changes in the legislation and regulations.
	1.1.3.3. Interviews with enterprise managers
Criteria 1.2. All applicable and legally prescribed fees, royalties, taxes and other charges shall be	
paid	
Indicators	Means of verification
1.2.1. There is a list of all applicable and	1.2.1.1. List of fees, royalties, taxes, and other
prescribed fees, royalties, taxes and other	payments with their due.
charges to be paid by the enterprise	1.2.1.2. Accounting reports.
	1.2.1.3. Interviews with enterprise managers.
	1.2.1.4. Interview with accountant
1.2.2. There is evidence that all applicable	1.2.2.1. List of fees, royalties, taxes, and other
and prescribed fees, royalties, taxes and	payments with their due.
other charges are paid as required and	1.2.2.2. Accounting reports.
promptly	1.2.2.3. Interviews with accountant.
	1.2.2.4. Tax inspector's confirmation of receipt

<sup>4</sup> Hereinafter when interviewing local communities it is necessary to also approach their major informal groups and NGOs (e.g. councils of veterans), not just local authorities representatives (elder, the head of territorial public government etc.).

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup> Hereinafter in **bold** are shown the indicators non-compliance to which should disqualify an operation from being FSC certified (major non-compliance). The complete list of preconditions for certification is given in Annex I.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup> Hereinafter the staff should be interpreted, when it is relevant, as forest workers and other staff of the applicant, subcontractors and their staff and other sub-licensees working in the area under certification.

1.2.3. There is evidence that all wages and salaries prescribed by laws, regulations, forestry tariff agreements, collective and work agreements are paid to the staff fully and promptly	1.2.3.1. List of relevant payments to the staff. 1.2.3.2. Accounting reports. 1.2.3.3. Interview with enterprise accountant. 1.2.3.4. Interviews with staff
	ons of all binding international agreements, such as
CITES, ILO Conventions, ITTA, and Convention	
Indicators	Means of verification
1.3.1. The enterprise maintains a list of species of wild flora and fauna as well as relevant sites	1.3.1.1. Texts of conventions and relevant
	agreements ratified by Russia.
that occur within its forest management area to	1.3.1.2. List of relevant species and areas.
which the country's agreements pertain.	1.3.1.3. Maps if necessary. 1.3.1.4. Licenses if relevant
Note: For further information on CITES, Conven-	1.5.1.4. Licenses ii felevalit
tion on Biological Diversity, Ramsar Convention	
and bilateral agreements see <i>Annexes B</i> and <i>C</i>	
1.3.2. Staff are aware about the content of the	1.3.2.1. Texts of conventions and relevant
relevant international conventions and	agreements ratified by Russia.
agreements ratified by Russia	1.3.2.2. Decisions by the enterprise to make the
	staff aware about the relevant conventions and the
	accessibility of the latter to the staff.
	1.3.2.3. Records of awareness activities (programs
	and lists of participants).
	1.3.2.4. Interviews with staff
1.3.3. <i>Management plan</i> and the operating	1.3.3.1. Texts of conventions and relevant
guidelines for staff address the major	agreements ratified by Russia.
provisions of the relevant international	1.3.3.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest
conventions and agreements	inventory materials), proekt osvoyeniya lesov
	(forest management plan) and/or other documents
	that consider provisions of the conventions.
	1.3.3.3. Interviews with enterprise managers.
124 77	1.3.3.4. Interviews with staff
1.3.4. The enterprise does not use forced labor,	1.3.4.1. Interviews with personnel managers. 1.3.4.2. Interviews with staff
nor employ foreigners not registered in	1.3.4.2. Interviews with staff
accordance to the law or those without	
citizenship Criteria 1.4. Conflicts between laws, regulations	g and the ESC Driveinles and Critoria shall be
evaluated for the purposes of certification, on a	1
involved or affected parties	cuse by cuse busis, by the certifiers and the
Indicators	Means of verification
1.4.1. There is a list of conflicts between	1.4.1.1. List and descriptions of relevant conflicts
national laws and/or administrative regulations	1 Dist and descriptions of felevant conflicts
and FSC Principles and Criteria	
1.4.2. All negotiations and consultations of	1.4.2.1. Evidence of communication
enterprise managers with relevant regulatory	(correspondence, minutes of meetings and
bodies, <i>stakeholders</i> <sup>5</sup> and the certification body	protocols on conflict resolution).
to resolve the identified conflicts and non-	1.4.2.2. Internal procedures for resolution of
compliances with laws and regulations are	conflicts and non-compliances between the
documented	legislation and FSC Principles and Criteria.
	1.4.2.3. Interviews with stakeholders

 $<sup>^{5}</sup>$  Hereinafter all terms and notions shown in *italic* are described in Annex G. Glossary.

-

1.5. Forest management areas shall be protected from illegal harvesting, settlement and other unauthorized activities	
Indicators	Means of verification
1.5.1. There is a system of measures to	1.5.1.1. System of measures for revealing,
reveal, document and prevent illegal	documenting and preventing illegal and
harvesting, illegal seizure of land, illegal	unauthorized activities.
construction and other illegal and	1.5.1.2. Records of illegal and unauthorized
unauthorized activities at the area	activities.
	1.5.1.3. Interviews with enterprise managers.
	1.5.1.4. Interviews with local authorities.
	1.5.1.5. Interviews with enforcement agencies in
	the sphere of management of natural resources.
	1.5.1.6. Interviews with stakeholders.
	1.5.1.7. Field inspection
1.5.2. The enterprise jointly with the	1.5.2.1. List of users with rights to manage or to
relevant agencies implements the respective	use the resources in the area.
measures	1.5.2.2. System of measures for revealing,
	documenting and preventing illegal activities.
	1.5.2.3. Records of illegal and unauthorized
	activities.
	1.5.2.4. Materials of inspections by protection
	or/and enforcement agencies in the sphere of
	management of natural resources.
	1.5.2.5. Interviews with protection and/pr
	enforcement agencies in the sphere of
	management of natural resources. 1.5.2.6. Interviews with stakeholders.
	1.5.2.7. Field inspection
1.5.3. There are no incidents of unauthorized	1.5.3.1. Forest inventory materials.
forest land seizure and construction	1.5.3.2. Legality certificates of land allotment.
	1.5.3.3. Interviews with enterprise specialists.
	1.5.3.4. Interviews with local communities
Criteria 1.6. Forest managers shall demonstrate a long-term commitment to adhere to the FSC Principles and Criteria	
Indicators	Means of verification
1.6.1. The enterprise has a statement of	1.6.1.1. A document declaring commitment to
commitment to FSC Principles and Criteria	FSC Principles and Criteria approved by the
	enterprise managers.
	1.6.1.2. Plans to expand FSC certification
	approved by the enterprise managers.
	1.6.1.3. Membership in FSC, the National
	Initiative or a regional working FSC group
1.6.2. The FSC Principles and Criteria are	1.6.2.1. Evidence of employee awareness
being explained to staff	training to FSC Principles and Criteria (official
	decisions, training programs, lists of
	participants).
	1.6.2.2. Information packages on FSC Principles
	and Criteria are available to staff.
	1.6.2.3. Interviews with enterprise managers
	1.6.2.4. Interviews with staff

### PRINCIPLE 2: TENURE AND USE RIGHTS AND RESPONSIBILITIES

Long-term tenure and use rights to the land and forest resources shall be clearly defined, documented and legally established

Criteria 2.1. Clear evidence of long-term use rights to the land (e.g. land title, customary rights,	
or lease agreements) shall be demonstrated	
Indicators	Means of verification
2.1.1. Documents confirming rights to own the <i>forest lands</i> and to manage or use forest resources at least for five years upon the issue of <i>certificate</i> are in place. For the enterprises seeking recertification documented evidence should be provided that such documents will be available to the date the <i>certificate</i> will be re-issued  2.1.2. The boundaries of the area are marked on maps and can be identified on site  Criteria 2.2. Local communities with legal or control to the autent process are to protect their	
they delegate control with free and informed c	rights or resources, over forest operations unless
Indicators	Means of verification
2.2.1. Local communities with legal or customary (including traditional) rights to use forest resources are identified	2.2.1.1. Documents and other evidence confirming the rights of local communities to use forest resources. 2.2.1.2. Maps. 2.2.1.3. Interviews with enterprise managers. 2.2.1.4. Interviews with local administration. 2.2.1.5. Interviews with local communities
2.2.2. Legal or customary (including traditional) tenure or use rights of local communities to the forest resources (such as mushroom and berry collection, recreation, hunting and fishing sites) are recognized in forest management planning (e.g. through public hearings).  Note: The procedure of consultations with and taking into account interests and concerns of indigenous peoples (indicators 3.1.2–3.1.5) also applies to local communities	2.2.2.1. The list of legal or customary (including traditional) tenure or use rights of local communities to the forest resources. 2.2.2.2. Documents on forests reserved for needs of local communities (forest inventory materials). 2.2.2.3. Documents on protective forests <sup>6</sup> and special protection forest patches <sup>7</sup> (OZU) around settlement (forest inventory materials). 2.2.2.4. Interviews with enterprise managers. 2.2.2.5. Interviews with local authorities. 2.2.2.6. Interviews with local communities. 2.2.2.7. Materials of the commissions in charge for timber lease auctions. 2.2.2.8. Protocols of public hearings (when applicable), minutes of meetings and evidence of correspondence with local communities

<sup>7</sup> Hereinafter forest patches with management restrictions being established in *protective*, exploitable and reserve forests, abbreviated *OZU*.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>6</sup> Hereinafter categories of *protective forests* (former 1<sup>st</sup> Group Forests) with management restrictions.

2.2.3. Local communities are given the	2.2.3.1. Evidence of participation of local
possibility to take part in control over	communities in control over forestry
forestry operations	operations (e.g. grievances regarding violation
Torestry operations	of their rights during forestry operations).
	2.2.3.2. Measures undertaken to address such
	grievances.
	2.2.3.3. Interviews with enterprise managers.
	2.2.3.4. Interviews with local authorities.
	2.2.3.5. Interviews with local communities
Criteria 2.3. Appropriate mechanisms shall be	employed to resolve disputes over tenure claims
and use rights. The circumstances and status	
considered in the certification evaluation. Dis	
significant number of interests will normally of	
Indicators	Means of verification
2.3.1. There is a documented procedure for	2.3.1.1. A written procedure for dispute
resolution of disputes over tenure claims	resolution.
(lease) and use rights to the forest resources	2.3.1.2. Interviews with enterprise managers.
	2.3.1.3. Interviews with local authorities.
	2.3.1.4. Interviews with local communities
2.3.2. The enterprise maintains a record of all	2.3.2.1. A register of disputes and grievances.
relevant disputes and grievances and of the	2.3.2.2. Interviews with enterprise managers.
status of their resolution	2.3.2.3. Interviews with local authorities.
	2.3.2.4. Interviews with local communities
2.3.3. Solutions with regard to outstanding	2.3.3.1. A written procedure for dispute
disputes are achieved that are acceptable	resolution.
for all affected parties.	2.3.3.2. Documents on disputes, grievances etc.
	2.3.3.3. The commission on dispute resolution
Notes: Outstanding disputes of substantial	is available as well as protocols of its meetings
magnitude involving different interests will	and decisions made.
normally disqualify an operation from being	2.3.3.4. Information is available that the
certified	relevant agreements are achieved.
	2.3.3.5. Information is available that the
	affected parties follow such decisions.
	2.3.3.6. Interviews with forest management
	administration and/or enforcement agencies in
	the sphere of forest management at the district
	level.
	2.3.3.7. Interviews with local authorities.
	2.3.3.8. Interviews with local communities

# PRINCIPLE 3: INDIGENOUS PEOPLES' RIGHTS

The legal and customary rights of indigenous peoples to own, use and manage their lands, territories, and resources shall be recognized and respected

Criteria 3.1. Indigenous peoples shall control forest management on their lands and territories	
unless they delegate control with free and info	
Indicators	Means of verification
3.1.1. All indigenous peoples <sup>8</sup> practicing	3.1.1.1. List of ethno-cultural indigenous
traditional use of natural resources in the	groups and communities.
forest management area and having	3.1.1.2. Documents as well as expertise of
declared themselves as such are determined	ethnologists and/or regional history experts
determined	confirming the tenure or use rights of
	indigenous peoples to the forest resources. 3.1.1.3. Interviews with enterprise managers.
	3.1.1.4. Interviews with staff of local education
	and cultural institutions.
	3.1.1.5. Interviews with local authorities.
	3.1.1.6. Interviews with regional and local
	indigenous organizations and local
	communities
3.1.2. <i>Indigenous peoples</i> have access to	3.1.2.1. Legislation and regulations.
information regarding the use of forest	3.1.2.2. Interviews with enterprise managers.
resources in this area in accordance with legal	3.1.2.3. Interviews with local authorities.
requirements.	3.1.2.4. Interviews with regional and local
•	indigenous organizations and local communities
Note: The procedure of consultations with	
indigenous peoples and consideration of their	
concerns (indicators 3.1.2–3.1.5) also applies to <i>local communities</i>	
	3.1.3.1. Publications about the forest lease or
3.1.3. <i>Forest land</i> has been given into lease or management in open manner, <i>indigenous</i>	management auctions.
peoples were informed about that (e.g.	3.1.3.2. Interviews with district level forest
through public hearings)	management administration.
amough puone nourings)	3.1.3.3. Protocols of public hearings (if
	applicable), minutes of meetings.
	3.1.3.4. Interviews with local authorities.
	3.1.3.5. Interviews with regional and local
	indigenous organizations and local communities
3.1.4. The enterprise has obtained a written	3.1.4.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest
agreement from local indigenous	inventory materials) or proekt osvoeniya lesov
communities that their interests and	(forest management plan).
concerns with regard to the use of the	3.1.4.2. Agreements with regional and local
forest resources in the area are	indigenous organizations and local
incorporated into the forest management	communities and/or protocols of meetings to
plan	agree on the forest management plan.
	3.1.4.3. Interviews with local authorities.
	3.1.4.4. Interviews with regional and local
	indigenous organizations and local
	communities

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>8</sup> Hereinafter *indigenous peoples* mean *indigenous people's communities*, including *communes (obshchiny)*. The interpretation of the notion *indigenous peoples* under Russian conditions see *Annex F Indigenous Peoples*.

15

3.1.5. There is a written agreement with <i>local</i>	3.1.5.1. Agreement with indigenous communities.
indigenous communities on procedures to	3.1.5.2. Evidence of correspondence and minutes
control harvesting and other forest operations	of meetings with authorized representatives of
in the area where <i>local indigenous community</i>	indigenous communities.
owns or uses natural resources	3.1.5.3. Interviews with enterprise managers.
	3.1.5.4. Interviews with local authorities.
	3.1.5.5. Interviews with regional and local
	indigenous organizations and local communities
3.1.6. There is a written procedure for dispute	3.1.6.1. A procedure for dispute resolution.
resolution and addressing grievances of	3.1.6.2. Interviews with enterprise managers.
indigenous peoples	3.1.6.3. Interviews with local authorities.
	3.1.6.4. Interviews with regional and local
	indigenous organizations and local communities
3.1.7. The enterprise keeps a record of	3.1.7.1. Register of grievances and claims.
disputes as well as grievances and claims of	3.1.7.2. Interviews with enterprise managers.
indigenous peoples	3.1.7.3. Interviews with local authorities.
	3.1.7.4. Interviews with regional and local
	indigenous organizations and local communities.
	3.1.7.5. Interviews with ethnologists and/or
	regional history experts
3.1.8. There are no outstanding disputes	3.1.8.1. Records and protocols of disputes,
between the enterprise and indigenous	claims, etc.
peoples.	3.1.8.2. Interviews with enterprise managers.
	3.1.8.3. Interviews with local authorities.
Note: Outstanding disputes of substantial	3.1.8.4. Interviews with regional and local
magnitude involving different interests will	indigenous organizations and local
normally disqualify an operation from being	communities.
certified	3.1.8.5. Interviews with ethnologists and/or
	regional history experts
	eaten or diminish, either directly or indirectly, the
resources or tenure rights of indigenous peoples	
Indicators	Means of verification
3.2.1. The enterprise jointly with <i>authorized</i>	3.2.1.1. Minutes of consultations with indigenous
representatives of indigenous communities	organizations and communities or minutes of
has assessed the risk of direct or indirect	meetings on forest inventory and planning
impact of forestry operations on the	(lesoustroitelnoe soveshchanie).
livelihoods of indigenous peoples, their rights	3.2.1.2. Materials for risk assessment of the
and natural resources they use (e.g. water	impact of forestry operations.
resources, wildlife and plants)	3.2.1.3. Documented assessment guidelines.

3.2.1.4. Interviews with local authorities.3.2.1.5. Interviews with regional and local

regional history experts

indigenous organizations and local communities. 3.2.1.6. Interviews with ethnologists and/or

3.2.2. Management activities prescribed by	3.2.2.1. Materials for risk assessment of the
the forest management plan do not threaten or	impact of forestry operations.
diminish the natural resources or tenure rights	3.2.2.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest
of <i>indigenous peoples</i> and do not deteriorate	inventory materials) or proekt osvoeniya lesov
their livelihoods	(forest management plan).
	3.2.2.3. Interviews with local authorities.
	3.2.2.4. Interviews with regional and local
	indigenous organizations and local communities.
	3.2.2.5. Interviews with ethnologists and/or
	regional history experts
3.2.3. Damage to natural resource on the	3.2.3.1. Documented evidence of damage.
indigenous communities' lands are	3.2.3.2. Documented evidence of damage
compensated with account for losses of	compensation.
natural resources (e.g. hunting, fisheries,	3.2.3.3. Interviews with local authorities.
berries, mushrooms, plants) or deterioration	3.2.3.4. Interviews with regional and local
of quality (e.g. water) and taking into account	indigenous organizations and local communities
concerns of the authorized representatives of	
indigenous communities	
Criteria 3.3. Sites of special cultural, ecological	al, economic or religious significance to
indigenous peoples shall be clearly identified t	in cooperation with such peoples, and recognized
and protected by forest managers	
Indicators	Means of verification
3.3.1. Sites of special cultural, ecological,	3.3.1.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest
economic or religious significance for	
economic or religious significance for indigenous peoples have been identified in	3.3.1.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoeniya lesov (forest management plan).
economic or religious significance for	3.3.1.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoeniya lesov (forest management plan). 3.3.1.2. List of identified sites and objects,
economic or religious significance for indigenous peoples have been identified in cooperation with them and recognized.	3.3.1.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoeniya lesov (forest management plan). 3.3.1.2. List of identified sites and objects, including maps.
economic or religious significance for indigenous peoples have been identified in cooperation with them and recognized.  Notes: See also Annex E. High Conservation	3.3.1.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoeniya lesov (forest management plan). 3.3.1.2. List of identified sites and objects, including maps. 3.3.1.3. Interviews with those involved in the
economic or religious significance for indigenous peoples have been identified in cooperation with them and recognized.  Notes: See also Annex E. High Conservation Value Forests, section Categories of HCVF and	3.3.1.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoeniya lesov (forest management plan). 3.3.1.2. List of identified sites and objects, including maps. 3.3.1.3. Interviews with those involved in the identification process.
economic or religious significance for indigenous peoples have been identified in cooperation with them and recognized.  Notes: See also Annex E. High Conservation	3.3.1.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoeniya lesov (forest management plan). 3.3.1.2. List of identified sites and objects, including maps. 3.3.1.3. Interviews with those involved in the identification process. 3.3.1.4. Interviews with local authorities.
economic or religious significance for indigenous peoples have been identified in cooperation with them and recognized.  Notes: See also Annex E. High Conservation Value Forests, section Categories of HCVF and	3.3.1.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoeniya lesov (forest management plan). 3.3.1.2. List of identified sites and objects, including maps. 3.3.1.3. Interviews with those involved in the identification process. 3.3.1.4. Interviews with local authorities. 3.3.1.5. Interviews with regional and local
economic or religious significance for indigenous peoples have been identified in cooperation with them and recognized.  Notes: See also Annex E. High Conservation Value Forests, section Categories of HCVF and	3.3.1.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoeniya lesov (forest management plan). 3.3.1.2. List of identified sites and objects, including maps. 3.3.1.3. Interviews with those involved in the identification process. 3.3.1.4. Interviews with local authorities. 3.3.1.5. Interviews with regional and local indigenous organizations and local
economic or religious significance for indigenous peoples have been identified in cooperation with them and recognized.  Notes: See also Annex E. High Conservation Value Forests, section Categories of HCVF and	3.3.1.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoeniya lesov (forest management plan). 3.3.1.2. List of identified sites and objects, including maps. 3.3.1.3. Interviews with those involved in the identification process. 3.3.1.4. Interviews with local authorities. 3.3.1.5. Interviews with regional and local indigenous organizations and local communities.
economic or religious significance for indigenous peoples have been identified in cooperation with them and recognized.  Notes: See also Annex E. High Conservation Value Forests, section Categories of HCVF and	3.3.1.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoeniya lesov (forest management plan). 3.3.1.2. List of identified sites and objects, including maps. 3.3.1.3. Interviews with those involved in the identification process. 3.3.1.4. Interviews with local authorities. 3.3.1.5. Interviews with regional and local indigenous organizations and local communities. 3.3.1.6. Interviews with ethnologists and/or
economic or religious significance for indigenous peoples have been identified in cooperation with them and recognized.  Notes: See also Annex E. High Conservation Value Forests, section Categories of HCVF and Indicator 9.1.5	3.3.1.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoeniya lesov (forest management plan). 3.3.1.2. List of identified sites and objects, including maps. 3.3.1.3. Interviews with those involved in the identification process. 3.3.1.4. Interviews with local authorities. 3.3.1.5. Interviews with regional and local indigenous organizations and local communities. 3.3.1.6. Interviews with ethnologists and/or regional history experts
economic or religious significance for indigenous peoples have been identified in cooperation with them and recognized.  Notes: See also Annex E. High Conservation Value Forests, section Categories of HCVF and Indicator 9.1.5	3.3.1.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoeniya lesov (forest management plan). 3.3.1.2. List of identified sites and objects, including maps. 3.3.1.3. Interviews with those involved in the identification process. 3.3.1.4. Interviews with local authorities. 3.3.1.5. Interviews with regional and local indigenous organizations and local communities. 3.3.1.6. Interviews with ethnologists and/or regional history experts 3.3.2.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest
economic or religious significance for indigenous peoples have been identified in cooperation with them and recognized.  Notes: See also Annex E. High Conservation Value Forests, section Categories of HCVF and Indicator 9.1.5	3.3.1.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoeniya lesov (forest management plan). 3.3.1.2. List of identified sites and objects, including maps. 3.3.1.3. Interviews with those involved in the identification process. 3.3.1.4. Interviews with local authorities. 3.3.1.5. Interviews with regional and local indigenous organizations and local communities. 3.3.1.6. Interviews with ethnologists and/or regional history experts 3.3.2.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoeniya lesov
economic or religious significance for indigenous peoples have been identified in cooperation with them and recognized.  Notes: See also Annex E. High Conservation Value Forests, section Categories of HCVF and Indicator 9.1.5	3.3.1.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoeniya lesov (forest management plan). 3.3.1.2. List of identified sites and objects, including maps. 3.3.1.3. Interviews with those involved in the identification process. 3.3.1.4. Interviews with local authorities. 3.3.1.5. Interviews with regional and local indigenous organizations and local communities. 3.3.1.6. Interviews with ethnologists and/or regional history experts 3.3.2.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoeniya lesov (forest management plan).
economic or religious significance for indigenous peoples have been identified in cooperation with them and recognized.  Notes: See also Annex E. High Conservation Value Forests, section Categories of HCVF and Indicator 9.1.5	3.3.1.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoeniya lesov (forest management plan). 3.3.1.2. List of identified sites and objects, including maps. 3.3.1.3. Interviews with those involved in the identification process. 3.3.1.4. Interviews with local authorities. 3.3.1.5. Interviews with regional and local indigenous organizations and local communities. 3.3.1.6. Interviews with ethnologists and/or regional history experts 3.3.2.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoeniya lesov (forest management plan). 3.3.2.2. List of identified sites, objects and
economic or religious significance for indigenous peoples have been identified in cooperation with them and recognized.  Notes: See also Annex E. High Conservation Value Forests, section Categories of HCVF and Indicator 9.1.5	3.3.1.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoeniya lesov (forest management plan). 3.3.1.2. List of identified sites and objects, including maps. 3.3.1.3. Interviews with those involved in the identification process. 3.3.1.4. Interviews with local authorities. 3.3.1.5. Interviews with regional and local indigenous organizations and local communities. 3.3.1.6. Interviews with ethnologists and/or regional history experts 3.3.2.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoeniya lesov (forest management plan). 3.3.2.2. List of identified sites, objects and ranges, including maps.
economic or religious significance for indigenous peoples have been identified in cooperation with them and recognized.  Notes: See also Annex E. High Conservation Value Forests, section Categories of HCVF and Indicator 9.1.5	3.3.1.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoeniya lesov (forest management plan). 3.3.1.2. List of identified sites and objects, including maps. 3.3.1.3. Interviews with those involved in the identification process. 3.3.1.4. Interviews with local authorities. 3.3.1.5. Interviews with regional and local indigenous organizations and local communities. 3.3.1.6. Interviews with ethnologists and/or regional history experts 3.3.2.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoeniya lesov (forest management plan). 3.3.2.2. List of identified sites, objects and ranges, including maps. 3.3.2.3. Interviews with local authorities.
economic or religious significance for indigenous peoples have been identified in cooperation with them and recognized.  Notes: See also Annex E. High Conservation Value Forests, section Categories of HCVF and Indicator 9.1.5	3.3.1.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoeniya lesov (forest management plan). 3.3.1.2. List of identified sites and objects, including maps. 3.3.1.3. Interviews with those involved in the identification process. 3.3.1.4. Interviews with local authorities. 3.3.1.5. Interviews with regional and local indigenous organizations and local communities. 3.3.1.6. Interviews with ethnologists and/or regional history experts 3.3.2.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoeniya lesov (forest management plan). 3.3.2.2. List of identified sites, objects and ranges, including maps. 3.3.2.3. Interviews with local authorities. 3.3.2.4. Interviews with regional and local
economic or religious significance for indigenous peoples have been identified in cooperation with them and recognized.  Notes: See also Annex E. High Conservation Value Forests, section Categories of HCVF and Indicator 9.1.5	3.3.1.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoeniya lesov (forest management plan). 3.3.1.2. List of identified sites and objects, including maps. 3.3.1.3. Interviews with those involved in the identification process. 3.3.1.4. Interviews with local authorities. 3.3.1.5. Interviews with regional and local indigenous organizations and local communities. 3.3.1.6. Interviews with ethnologists and/or regional history experts 3.3.2.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoeniya lesov (forest management plan). 3.3.2.2. List of identified sites, objects and ranges, including maps. 3.3.2.3. Interviews with local authorities.

3.3.3. Sites of special cultural, ecological, economic or religious significance, considering consultations with <i>indigenous peoples</i> , are protected and/or have special management restrictions	3.3.3.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoeniya lesov (forest management plan). 3.3.3.2. List of identified sites and objects. 3.3.3.3. Documents regulating the use or protection of the site, including maps. 3.3.3.4. Interviews with enterprise staff. 3.3.3.5. Interviews with local authorities. 3.3.3.6. Interviews with regional and local indigenous organizations and local communities. 3.3.3.7. Field inspection
3.3.4. The enterprise staff are informed of the location of respective sites and management restrictions in them	3.3.4.1. Interviews with enterprise staff. 3.3.4.2. Field inspection
3.3.5. Management activities threatening such sites should be suspended until acceptable decisions are made, based on consultation with authorized representatives of indigenous communities	3.3.5.1. Claims of indigenous peoples with regard to such sites and objects, cases when management activities have been suspended or relocated. 3.3.5.2. Maps. 3.3.5.3. Interviews with enterprise managers. 3.3.5.4. Interviews with local authorities. 3.3.5.5. Interviews with regional and local indigenous organizations and local communities. 3.3.5.6. Field inspection

Criteria 3.4. Indigenous peoples shall be compensated for the application of their traditional knowledge regarding the use of forest species or management systems in forest operations. This compensation shall be formally agreed upon with their free and informed consent before forest operations commence

F	
Indicators	Means of verification
3.4.1. Rights of <i>indigenous peoples</i> for	3.4.1.1. Documents on traditional knowledge and
commercial use of their traditional knowledge	skills of indigenous peoples and their commercial
and skills regarding the use of forest species	use.
or management systems in forest are	3.4.1.2. Interviews with enterprise managers.
recognized and if possible documented	3.4.1.3. Interviews with local authorities.
	3.4.1.4. Interviews with regional and local
	indigenous organizations and local communities
3.4.2. <i>Indigenous peoples</i> are compensated	3.4.2.1. Agreement with indigenous peoples on
for the application of their traditional	compensation for their traditional knowledge and
knowledge and skills regarding the use of	skills.
forest species or management systems in	3.4.2.2. Documents of compensations paid to
forest operations.	indigenous peoples.
	3.4.2.3. Interviews with local authorities.
Note: The size of such compensation shall be	3.4.2.4. Interviews with regional and local
formally agreed upon with authorized	indigenous organizations and local communities.
representatives of indigenous communities with	3.4.2.5. Interviews with ethnologists and/or
their free and informed consent before forest	regional history experts
operations commence	

# PRINCIPLE 4: COMMUNITY RELATIONS AND WORKER'S RIGHTS

Forest management operations shall maintain or enhance the long-term social and economic well-being of forest workers and local communities

Criteria 4.1. The communities within, or adjacent to, the forest management area should be		
<u> </u>	given opportunities for employment, training, and other services	
Indicators	Means of verification	
4.1.1. All other conditions being equal, the	4.1.1.1. List of staff with place of birth and	
enterprise gives employment priority to	address indicated.	
workers from local communities. The	4.1.1.2. Job contracts and agreements.	
employment of workers from other regions	4.1.1.3. Interviews with local authorities.	
of Russia and other countries should be	4.1.1.4. Interviews with staff.	
justified	4.1.1.5. Interviews with local communities.	
	4.1.1.6. Documents of the Migration Service	
4.1.2. The enterprise does not discriminate	4.1.2.1. Workers' grievances regarding their	
staff on the basis of their sex, nationality,	discrimination.	
religion and other characteristics with regard	4.1.2.2. Interviews with enterprise managers.	
to employment, workplace and human rights	4.1.2.3. Interviews with trade unions	
issues	representatives.	
	4.1.2.4. Interviews with staff	
4.1.3. The enterprise provides professional	4.1.3.1. Records of training and extension courses	
training and extension of professional	for staff (programs of training and extension	
knowledge and skills for staff from local	courses, lists of participants).	
communities	4.1.3.2. Documented professional skills.	
	4.1.3.3. Interviews with trade union	
	representatives.	
	4.1.3.4. Interviews with staff	
4.1.4. The enterprise participates in	4.1.4.1. Evidence of participation in maintenance	
maintenance of the social infrastructure of	of the local social infrastructure.	
forest villages	4.1.4.2. Interviews with enterprise managers.	
	4.1.4.3. Interviews with local authorities.	
	4.1.4.4. Interviews with local communities	
4.1.5. The enterprise provides assistance to	4.1.5.1. Evidence of providing assistance and	
local communities, increasing the quality of	services to local communities.	
their life	4.1.5.2. Interviews with enterprise managers.	
	4.1.5.3. Interviews with local authorities.	
	4.1.5.4. Interviews with local communities	
4.1.6. The enterprise does not restrict access	4.1.6.1. Documents at the enterprise on areas	
of people to forest, except during periods of	traditionally used by local people.	
high fire danger and emergency situations.	4.1.6.2. The presence of relevant official	
Within the forest management area people are	regulations.	
provided with possibilities to collect for their	4.1.6.3. Instructions and rules of behavior during	
own needs wild-growing fruits, berries, nuts,	periods of high fire danger and emergency	
mushrooms and other forest food resources,	situations.	
medicinal plants and technical raw materials	4.1.6.4. Enterprise manager's orders and	
to perform cultural, recreational, tourist and	decisions.	
sporting activities and to hunt and to fish	4.1.6.5. Interviews with local authorities.	
	4.1.6.6. Interviews with local communities	

Criteria 4.2. Forest management should meet	or exceed all applicable laws and/or regulations
covering health and safety of employees and th	
Indicators	Means of verification
4.2.1. The enterprise has health and safety laws and administrative regulations.	4.2.1.1. List of health and safety regulations. 4.2.1.2. Availability of administrative health and safety regulations.
Note: The latter include technical regulations, interdepartmental and departmental safety regulations, interdepartmental and departmental template safety instructions, safety policy, equipment use and safety guidelines, state construction rules and standards, state sanitary and epidemiological rules and standards	<ul><li>4.2.1.3. Interviews with health and safety specialist.</li><li>4.2.1.4. Interviews with staff</li></ul>
4.2.2. Legislation and administrative regulations on health and safety are available for staff	4.2.2.1. Interviews with staff. 4.2.2.2. Availability of administrative health and safety regulations
4.2.3. Staff are familiar with health and safety rules	4.2.3.1. Health and safety training records. 4.2.3.2. Interviews with health and safety specialist. 4.2.3.3. Interviews with staff
4.2.4. The enterprise has a health and safety department or a respective specialist.	4.2.4.1. Order No.10 of the Ministry of Labor <i>On Number of Health and Safety Personnel in Organizations</i> as of January 22 2001.
Note: The number of personnel in the Health and Safety Department should correspond to the Interdepartmental regulations No. 10 <i>On Number of Health and Safety Personnel in Organizations</i> approved by the Ministry of Labor as of January 22 2001	4.2.4.2. Rules for the Health and Safety Department (when applicable) or terms of reference for the health and safety specialist. 4.2.4.3. Interviews with health and safety specialist. 4.2.4.4. Interviews with staff. 4.2.4.5. Field inspection
4.2.5. The enterprise has certified working places	4.2.5.1. Materials on certification of working places. 4.2.5.2. Health and safety training records. 4.2.5.3. Interviews with health and safety specialists. 4.2.5.4. Interviews with staff
4.2.6. There is a system of administrative and public control at the enterprise (carried out by the management, workers council, trade unions or a public representative on health and safety)	<ul><li>4.2.6.1. Records of administrative and public control.</li><li>4.2.6.2. Interviews with staff</li></ul>
4.2.7. Enterprise managers and health and safety specialists are trained in consistence to requirements of labor legislation	<ul> <li>4.2.7.1. Labor legislation.</li> <li>4.2.7.2. Records of health and safety training of managers and health and safety specialists.</li> <li>4.2.7.3. Interviews with enterprise managers.</li> <li>4.2.7.4. Interviews with health and safety specialists</li> </ul>

4.2.8. Staff are trained in work safety	4.2.8.1. Records of instructions at working
measures and tested on knowledge of	place and admission to work with mandatory
health and safety requirements.	signatures of instructor and staff.
	4.2.8.2. List of professions and job positions,
Note: Training should include instructing on	which do not require primary instructions at
health and safety, primary, recurring and	working place approved by the management
unscheduled instruction and training at	and agreed with trade union committee and
working place and on first aid assistance for	department (specialist) on health and safety.
industrial injuries	4.2.8.3. Programs of training courses on health
	and safety.
	4.2.8.4. Decisions to establish a commission(s)
	for checking health and safety knowledge of
	workers and protocols of checks.
	4.2.8.5. Certificates of workers on passing
	inspections on health and safety.
	4.2.8.6. Approved schedule for verifying health
	and safety knowledge.
	4.2.8.7. Interviews with health and safety
	specialists.
	4.2.8.8. Interviews with staff
4.2.9. The enterprise provides forest	4.2.9.1. ILO Code of Practice on Safety and
workers with certified individual safety	Health in Forestry Work and FSC-POL-30-
equipment in accordance with legal	401 FSC Certification and the ILO Conventions.
requirements, but not lower than	4.2.9.2. Standards for expenditure of
requirements of ILO Code of Practice on	individual safety equipment at the enterprise.
Safety and Health in Forestry Work, 1998)	4.2.9.3. Records of individual safety equipment
and FSC-POL-30-401 FSC Certification	expenditures.
and the ILO Conventions	4.2.9.4. Interviews with staff. 4.2.9.5. Field inspection
4.2.10. There is a system to supervise	4.2.10.1. Records of instruction.
observation of the requirements of health	4.2.10.1. Records of histraction. 4.2.10.2. Schedules of public and
and safety regulations and use of individual	administrative verification.
safety equipment	4.2.10.3. Inspection protocols by enterprise
surety equipment	managers and health and safety specialists.
	4.2.10.4. Interviews with enterprise managers.
	4.2.10.5. Interviews with health and safety
	specialists.
	4.2.10.6. Field inspection
Criteria 4.3. The rights of workers to organize	and voluntarily negotiate with their employers
shall be guaranteed as outlined in Convention.	s 87 and 98 of the International Labor
Organization (ILO)	
Indicators	Means of verification
4.3.1. Enterprise managers and staff are	4.3.1.1. Availability of conventions at the
familiar with the main provisions of ILO	enterprise.
Conventions 87 and 98	4.3.1.2. Interviews with enterprise managers.
	4.3.1.3. Interviews with staff

4.3.2. Conditions of the tariff agreement for	4.3.2.1. Collective labor agreement and tariff
the forest industries of the Russian	agreements.
Federation are observed. In particular the	4.3.2.2. Reports on the observation of the
enterprise has made a collective labor	collective labor agreement and tariff
agreement and individual contracts and/or	agreements.
labor agreements with employee	4.3.2.3. Individual labor contracts (labor
	agreements).
	4.3.2.4. Records of disputes with workers and
	their grievances as well as their consideration.
	4.3.2.5. Interviews with trade union
	representatives.
	4.3.2.6. Interviews with staff
4.3.3. The are no disputes of substantial	4.3.3.1. Records of disputes and grievances.
magnitude involving employees and	4.3.3.2. Interviews with enterprise managers.
enterprise managers	4.3.3.3. Interviews with staff
Criteria 4.4. Management planning and opera	tions shall incorporate the results of evaluations
of social impact. Consultations shall be mainte	1 1 0 1 1
women) directly affected by management oper	
Indicators	Means of verification
4.4.1. <i>Local communities</i> , local authorities	4.4.1.1. Written evidence that the
and other <i>stakeholders</i> are provided with	lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory
opportunities to make proposals on how to	materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest
take into account social impact in the forest	management plan) is agreed with local authorities
management plans (e.g. through public	and local communities (e.g. protocols and
hearings, forest inventory meetings, local	minutes of public hearings, gatherings and forest
community gatherings (skhody)).	inventory meetings).
	4.4.1.2. Mass media publications.
Note: With respect to local communities	4.4.1.3. Interviews with local authorities.
indicators 3.1.2–3.1.4 should be also considered	4.4.1.4. Interviews with local communities
4.4.2. There is a procedure to consider	4.4.2.1. Protocols and minutes of public hearings,
proposals on the basis of consultations	gatherings, forest inventory meetings and regular
between enterprise and <i>local communities</i> and	consultations.
other stakeholders	4.4.2.2. List of stakeholders.
	4.4.2.3. Evidence of communications with local
	authorities and other stakeholders.
	4.4.2.4. Interviews with enterprise managers.
	4.4.2.5. Interviews with local communities.
	4.4.2.6. Interviews with stakeholders
4.4.3. All collected proposals and results of	4.4.3.1. Protocols and minutes of public hearings,
their consideration are available to the public	gatherings, forest inventory meetings and regular
	consultations.
	4.4.3.2. Written conclusions of collected
	proposals.
	4.4.3.3. Interviews with local communities.
	4.4.3.4. Interviews with stakeholders
4.4.4. The enterprise has conducted an	4.4.4.1. Materials of the socio-economic impact
assessment of possible socio-economic	assessment.
impact of its activity, taking into account	4.4.4.2. Interviews with enterprise managers.
conclusions from Indicator 4.4.3	4.4.4.3. Interviews with stakeholders

Criteria 4.5. Appropriate mechanisms shall be employed for resolving grievances and for providing fair compensation in the case of loss or damage affecting the legal or customary rights, property, resources, or livelihoods of local peoples. Measures shall be taken to avoid such loss or damage

buen tobs or damede	
Indicators	Means of verification
4.5.1. There is a written procedure for	4.5.1.1. Procedure for grievance resolution and
resolving grievances and for providing	loss and damage compensation.
compensation in the case of loss or damage	4.5.1.2. Protocols and minutes of conflict
inflicted on <i>local communities</i> by	resolution committee meetings.
management activities, agreed with their	4.5.1.3. Interviews with enterprise managers.
authorized representatives	4.5.1.4. Interviews with local communities
4.5.2. The enterprise keeps a record of	4.5.2.1. Procedure for grievance resolution and
successfully resolved grievances and loss and	loss and damage compensation.
damage compensations paid to the satisfaction	4.5.2.2. Records of grievance resolution and
of both parties	compensation of losses and damage.
	4.5.2.3. Interviews with enterprise managers.
	4.5.2.4. Interviews with local communities
4.5.3. There are no disputes of substantial	4.5.3.1. Interviews with enterprise managers.
magnitude between the enterprise and local	4.5.3.2. Interviews with local communities
communities	

# PRINCIPLE 5: BENEFITS FROM THE FOREST

Forest management operations shall encourage the efficient use of the forest's multiple products and services to ensure economic viability and a wide range of environmental and social benefits

Criteria 5.1. Forest management should strive	
•	erational costs of production, and ensuring the
investments necessary to maintain the ecologic	
Indicators	Means of verification
5.1.1. The enterprise has the resources to	5.1.1.1. Materials of economic justification of
implement the forest management plan and	forestry activities.
all associated management activities (in	5.1.1.2. Economic analysis of fulfillment of the
particular harvesting, road construction,	financial plan for the current and past years.
silvicultural operations, forest protection	5.1.1.3. Financial results of enterprise's
and monitoring, identification and	activity (balance report).
protection of HCVF, key biotopes).	5.1.1.4. Financial plan.
	5.1.1.5. Interviews with enterprise managers.
Note: Such resources may belong to the	5.1.1.6. Conclusions of independent financial
resources of enterprise itself or be provided by	audit.
affiliated or partner organizations or resources	5.1.1.7. Written commitment of affiliated or
provided by federal or regional budgets	partner organizations to allocate relevant
	resources
5.1.2. The management activities are	5.1.2.1. Financial plan.
economically sustainable and capable of	5.1.2.2. Economic analysis of fulfillment of the
providing a level of investment sufficient to	financial plan
ensure the survival of the organization in	5.1.2.3. Balance report or financial results of
long term, while taking into account all	enterprise's activity.
environmental, social and operational	5.1.2.4. Enterprise's plans to increase
expenditures	revenues/profitability and to reduce costs.
capenatures	5.1.2.5. Interviews with enterprise managers
5.1.3. The enterprise allocates funding for	5.1.3.1. Financial plan and other documents.
silvicultural operations and forest fire	5.1.3.2. Economic analysis of fulfillment of the
	financial plan.
protection and regeneration measures	-
	5.1.3.3. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest
	inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya
	(forest management plan).
Criteria 5.2 Format an anna ann ant an I an amhati	5.1.3.4. Field inspection
,	ng operations should encourage the optimal use
and local processing of the forest's diversity of	
Indicators	Means of verification
5.2.1. The enterprise seeks the best economic	5.2.1.1. List and volumes of different kinds of
use of forest resources taking into account its	proposed products.
financial and technical possibilities.	5.2.1.2. List of enterprise's buyers.
-	5.2.1.3. Trend over recent years of kinds and
Notes: such activity may include marketing of	volumes of products obtained by different grades.
various products, product sorting and grade	5.2.1.4. Trend over recent years of sales in value
recovery of harvested timber as well as its	by product.
processing	5.2.1.5. Evidence of enterprise's efforts to
	explore new markets for forest products.
	5.2.1.6. Interviews with enterprise managers
	1 5 1 1 1 1 1 1 1

5.2.2. The enterprise strives towards	5.2.2.1. Records of product sales.
processing of forest resources or delivers the	5.2.2.2. List of buyers of enterprise's products.
resources to local or regional wood	5.2.2.3. Documents on change in types and
processing enterprises	volumes of products by category in the last years.
	5.2.2.4. Record of change in types and volumes
	of products by category in recent years.
	5.2.2.5. Evidence of the enterprise's efforts to
	increase the share of self-processing and/or the
	share of local/regional buyers of wood products.
	5.2.2.6. Interviews with enterprise managers.
	_ =
Critaria 5 2 Forest management about deninis	5.2.2.7. Interviews with local wood processors
	nize waste associated with harvesting and on-site
processing operations and avoid damage to oth	
Indicators	Means of verification
5.3.1. All kinds of merchantable harvested	5.3.1.1. Evidence of the use of low-waste
wood and secondary wood products should be	technologies.
processed if it is economically and technically	5.3.1.2. Interviews with enterprise managers.
viable	5.3.1.3. Field inspection
5.3.2. The enterprise utilizes wood waste if	5.3.2.1. Evidence of the use of low-waste
this does not contradict fire safety and	technologies.
environmental requirements.	5.3.2.2. List of measures on biodiversity
	protection and forest regeneration.
Note: Biodiversity conservation measures may	5.3.2.3. Interviews with enterprise managers.
require leaving of high stumps and large-sized	5.3.2.4. Interviews with enterprise specialists.
down trees or slash residues. See also Criterion	5.3.2.5. Field inspection
6.2 and Annex C, section Identification and	
Protection of Habitats of Rare, Endangered and	
Threatened Species of Plants, Animals and Fungi	
5.3.3. Harvesting and <i>silvicultural operations</i>	5.3.3.1. Harvesting documents (forest declaration,
should not lead to the unjustified damage to	harvesting permits or orders), including maps.
the residual trees and their groups (young	5.3.3.2. List of measures for biodiversity
growth and seed and other retention trees).	protection and forest regeneration.
	5.3.3.3. Relevant administrative regulations.
Note: See also Criteria 6.2 and 6.5, Annex C,	5.3.3.4. Interviews with enterprise managers.
section Identification and Protection of Habitats	5.3.3.5. Interviews with enterprise specialists.
of Rare, Endangered and Threatened Species of	5.3.3.6. Field inspection
Plants, Animals and Fungi	
_	to strengthen and diversify the local economy,
avoiding dependence on a single forest produc	
Indicators	Means of verification
5.4.1. The enterprise brings a diversity of	5.4.1.1. List of goods and volumes of offered
goods and services to the market, including	products by category.
those demanded in the local market	5.4.1.2. List of buyers of forest products.
	5.4.1.3. Change in kinds and volumes of products
	offered, by category, over recent years.
	5.4.1.4. Change in prices for products offered, by
	category, in recent years.
	5.4.1.5. Evidence of enterprise's efforts to
	explore new markets for wood products.
	5.4.1.6. Interviews with enterprise managers

	1
5.4.2. The enterprise strives to strengthen and	5.4.2.1. List and volumes of offered products by
diversify the local economy, e.g. by	category.
delivering goods and services to the local	5.4.2.2. List of buyers.
market, implementing a program of	5.4.2.3. Change in kinds and volumes of products
diversification or participating in the	by category over recent years.
respective regional program	5.4.2.4. Interviews with enterprise managers.
respective regional program	5.4.2.5. Interviews with local buyers
5.4.3. The enterprise encourages development	5.4.3.1. Documents that permit the use of forest.
of different kinds of forest use (such as	5.4.3.2. List of types of forest use.
collection of mushrooms and berries, hunting,	5.4.3.3. Interviews with enterprise managers.
recreation)	5.4.3.4. Interviews with local authorities.
recreation)	5.4.3.5. Interviews with local communities
Cuitaria 5 5 Fanast managament anaugtions s	
	hall recognize, maintain, and, where appropriate,
enhance the value of forest services and resou	-
Indicators	Means of verification
5.5.1. Protective zones are established	5.5.1.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest
along all water streams, lakes and bogs	inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya
(high moors); their dimensions are not	(forest management plan).
smaller than prescribed by the federal laws	5.5.1.2. Maps with marked water protective
	zones (protective forests, OZU).
	5.5.1.3. Field inspection
5.5.2. <i>Water protective</i> (riparian) <i>zones</i> within	5.5.2.1. Forest inventory materials with
the zone of harvesting operations are marked	descriptions of individual stands.
on site with "Stop!" signs and restrictive road	5.5.2.2. Maps with water protective zones
signs	(protective forests, OZU).
	5.5.2.3. Field inspection
5.5.3. Wetlands are drained only if this is	5.5.3.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest
required for restoration of their natural	inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest
hydrological regime	management plan).
	5.5.3.2. Documents of forest reclamation works.
	5.5.3.3. Field inspection
5.5.4. Forest operations within water	5.5.4.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest
protective zones along water streams of all	inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya
types (protective forests and OZU) do not	(forest management plan).
undermine the ecological value of these	5.5.4.2. Plan of forest operations with maps.
territories.	5.5.4.3. Results of monitoring (see Criterion
territories.	8.2).
Note: see Indicator 8.2.1	5.5.4.4. Interviews with local communities.
Title see indicator of all	5.5.4.5. Interview with fishery inspector.
	5.5.4.6. Interview with history hispector.
	inspector (Rosvodnadzor).
	•
	5.5.4.7. Interview with protection and/or
	enforcement agencies in the sphere of
	management of natural resources.
555 F	5.5.4.8. Field inspection
5.5.5. Forest management shall protect or	<b>5.5.4.8. Field inspection</b> 5.5.5.1. Records of monitoring of the impact of
maintain ecosystem services (e.g. watershed	<ul><li>5.5.4.8. Field inspection</li><li>5.5.5.1. Records of monitoring of the impact of forest management.</li></ul>
maintain ecosystem services (e.g. watershed protection) and resources of non-timber forest	<ul><li>5.5.4.8. Field inspection</li><li>5.5.5.1. Records of monitoring of the impact of forest management.</li><li>5.5.5.2. Interviews with local communities.</li></ul>
maintain ecosystem services (e.g. watershed protection) and resources of non-timber forest products (fish, wildlife, berries and	<ul> <li>5.5.4.8. Field inspection</li> <li>5.5.5.1. Records of monitoring of the impact of forest management.</li> <li>5.5.5.2. Interviews with local communities.</li> <li>5.5.5.3. Interviews with stakeholders.</li> </ul>
maintain ecosystem services (e.g. watershed protection) and resources of non-timber forest products (fish, wildlife, berries and mushrooms), while taking into account the	<ul><li>5.5.4.8. Field inspection</li><li>5.5.5.1. Records of monitoring of the impact of forest management.</li><li>5.5.5.2. Interviews with local communities.</li></ul>
maintain ecosystem services (e.g. watershed protection) and resources of non-timber forest products (fish, wildlife, berries and	<ul> <li>5.5.4.8. Field inspection</li> <li>5.5.5.1. Records of monitoring of the impact of forest management.</li> <li>5.5.5.2. Interviews with local communities.</li> <li>5.5.5.3. Interviews with stakeholders.</li> </ul>

Criteria 5.6. The rates of harvest of forest prod permanently sustained	ducts shall not exceed levels which can be
Indicators	Means of verification
5.6.1. The annual allowable cut (AAC) and total expected annual timber removals are determined by forest groups, management units and management sections.	5.6.1.1. Guidelines for determining AAC (raschetnaya lesoseka/dopustimaya norma polzovaniya). 5.6.1.2. Rational for the method for determining ACC for each management
Note: Total expected annual timber removals should account for all types of harvesting (including silvicultural operations and salvage logging). When necessary they shall be revised considering losses of merchantable timber occurring due to forest fires, pest outbreaks and massive windfalls	section, lease as a whole or it separate area. 5.6.1.3. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest management plan). 5.6.1.4. Annual monitoring data. 5.6.1.5. Interviews with enterprise managers
<ul> <li>5.6.2. The following volumes of timber are excluded from the applicable annual allowable cut:</li> <li>harvesting of which is prohibited or restricted by the regime of protected sites9;</li> <li>harvesting of which is permitted but would not be possible due to economic inaccessibility or insufficient growing stock (economically inaccessible forests)</li> </ul>	5.6.2.1. Guidelines for determining annual allowable cut (raschetnaya lesoseka/dopustimaya norma polzovaniya). 5.6.2.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest management plan). 5.6.2.3. Calculation of annual timber removals
5.6.3. Annual timber removals for each management section should not lead to reduction of the yield in the short or long term, neither overall, nor for economically accessible forests.  Note: The only exception is the lowering of AAC for management sections, whose area should be reduced in consistence with long-term management objectives	5.6.3.1. Lease agreement. 5.6.3.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest management plan). 5.6.3.3. Report on annual timber removals. 5.6.3.4. Graph showing the AAC dynamics over the period greater than half of a rotation period (duration of long-term lease) in general and separately for economically accessible forests
5.6.4. The <i>annual timber removals</i> should be documented for each <i>harvest area</i> (lesoseka) or <i>cutblock</i> (delyanka)	5.6.4.1. Records showing annual timber removals. 5.6.4.2. Harvesting documents (forest declaration, harvesting permits or orders). 5.6.4.3. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest management plan). 5.6.4.4. Field inspection

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>9</sup> Hereinafter *protected sites* are understood as existing protected areas and candidate areas, *protective forests*, *OZU*, including candidate areas of ecological network and other areas voluntarily set aside for conservation by the enterprise.

<ul> <li>5.6.5. The harvesting document for a particular harvest area or cutblock, including a technological map, should contain:</li> <li>the location, including forest group, block (kvartal), section (vydel), harvest area or cutblock;</li> <li>type of management operation (use);</li> <li>type and technique of harvesting;</li> <li>grade of harvested timber;</li> <li>harvest area or cutblocks;</li> <li>pre-harvest stand composition;</li> <li>area at which young growth should be retained;</li> <li>volume of harvested timber or other resources;</li> <li>indication which trees shall and shall not be harvested;</li> <li>deadlines for harvesting and removal from forest;</li> <li>forest protection measures and their timelines;</li> <li>method for clearing the harvest area;</li> <li>peculiarities of harvesting techniques;</li> <li>forest regeneration activities;</li> <li>maps of harvest areas and cutblocks with shown residual stands (patches that should be left unharvested)</li> </ul>	5.6.5.1. Harvesting documents (forest declaration, harvesting permits or orders), including maps. 5.6.5.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest management plan)
5.6.6. The use of <i>secondary forest resources</i> in the area is documented	5.6.6.1. Harvesting documents for secondary forest resources. 5.6.6.2. Interviews with district level forest management administration. 5.6.6.3. Interviews with staff
5.6.7. The use of <i>secondary forest resources</i> in the area does not lead to depletion of respective resources	5.6.7.1. Harvesting documents for secondary forest resources. 5.6.7.2. Interviews with district level forest management administration. 5.6.7.3. Interviews with staff. 5.6.7.4. Interviews with local communities. 5.6.7.5. Field inspection

# PRINCIPLE 6: ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT

Forest management shall conserve biological diversity and its associated values, water resources, soils, and unique and fragile ecosystems and landscapes and, by so doing, maintain the ecological functions and the integrity of the forest

	pacts shall be completed – appropriate to the scale,
intensity of forest management and the unique	eness of the affected resources – and adequately
integrated into management systems. Assessm	ents shall include landscape level considerations as
well as the impacts of on-site processing facilities. Environmental impacts shall be assessed prior	
to commencement of site-disturbing operations	
Indicators	Means of verification
6.1.1. The environmental impact assessment	6.1.1.1. Materials of OVOS and/or EE.
(OVOS) and/or State Environmental	6.1.1.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest
Expertise (ekologicheslaya ekspertiza, EE)	inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya
for the forest management plan has been	(forest management plan)
conducted, taking into consideration the	<b>6.1.1.3.</b> Interviews with enterprise specialists
unique and/or protected resources of the	
management area	
6.1.2. During the <i>environmental impact</i>	6.1.2.1. Materials of OVOS or State
assessment and/or State Environmental	Environmental Expertise.
Expertise materials of surveys for rare,	6.1.2.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest
threatened and endangered species of plants,	inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest
fungi and animals listed in the Red Data Book	management plan)
of the Russian Federation and regional red-	6.1.2.3. Red Data Book of the Russian Federation
data books (lists) (see <i>Annex C</i> ) as well as of	and regional red data books (lists) and the list of
species subject to multilateral agreements on	species subject to multilateral agreements on
environment protection ratified by Russia (see	environment protection ratified by Russia.
<i>Annex B</i> ) have been taken into account	6.1.2.4. Survey materials, including maps of rare,
	threatened and endangered species.
	6.1.2.5. Methods, guidelines and recommendations
	for identification and protection of rare, threatened
	and endangered species.
	6.1.2.6. Interviews with enterprise specialists.
	6.1.2.7. Interviews with district level forest

management administration

(12 Th-	(121 Matarials of OVOC an Chata
6.1.3. The environmental impact assessment	6.1.3.1. Materials of OVOS or State
and/or State Environmental Expertise have	Environmental Expertise.
taken into account survey materials for high	6.1.3.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest
conservation value forests (HCVF) and	inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest
representative samples of forest ecosystems	management plan).
and their relative position with existing and	6.1.3.3. Materials of surveys and maps of HCVF,
candidate protected areas, water protective	representative samples of forest ecosystems, water
zones, OZU and approved maps and plans of	protective zones, existing and candidate protected
ecological networks (see <i>Annexes D</i> and <i>E</i> )	areas, approved maps and plans of ecological
	networks and OZU.
	6.1.3.4. Methods, guidelines and recommendations
	for identification and protection of HCVF and
	representative samples of forest ecosystems.
	6.1.3.5. Agreements with stakeholders on
	protection of HCVF.
	6.1.3.6. Interviews with enterprise specialists.
	6.1.3.7. Interviews with district level forest
	management administration.
	6.1.3.8. Interviews with stakeholders
6.1.4. The environmental impact assessment	6.1.4.1. Materials of OVOS or State
and/or State Environmental Expertise	Environmental Expertise.
management guidelines (harvesting	6.1.4.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest
techniques, silvicultural system, guidelines on	inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest
biodiversity protection etc.) includes	management plan).
assessment of landscape-level considerations	6.1.4.3. Management guidelines.
(district level forest management	6.1.4.4. Interviews with enterprise specialists.
administration unit) as well as the impacts of	6.1.4.5. Interviews with district level forest
on-site processing facilities	management administration
6.1.5. During the <i>environmental impact</i>	6.1.5.1. Rationale for AAC and recommended
assessment and/or State Environmental	level of annual timber removal.
Expertise the rationale for and sustainability	6.1.5.2. Materials of OVOS or State
of the recommended level of annual timber	Environmental Expertise.
removals (annual allowable cut) have been	6.1.5.3. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest
assessed	inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest
	management plan).
	6.1.5.4. Interviews with enterprise specialists.
	6.1.5.5. Interviews with district level forest
	management administration
6.1.6. The enterprise controls and evaluates	6.1.6.1. Guidelines and instructions for planning
the impact of <i>silvicultural</i> and harvesting	and carrying out silvicultural and harvesting
operations on the environment at a local (site)	operations.
level	6.1.6.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest
	inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest
	management plan).
	6.1.6.3. Certificates of harvest area inspections and
	technical inspection reports.
	6.1.6.4. Technological map.
	6.1.6.5. Field inspection
	6.1.6.5. Field inspection

6.1.7. The enterprise takes into account the results of the <i>environmental impact</i> assessment and/or <i>State Environmental</i>	
results of the environmental impact	6.1.7.1. Materials of OVOS or State
*	Environmental Expertise.
	6.1.7.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest
Expertise in consistence to the requirements	inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest
of indicators 6.1.2–6.1.6 when preparing and	management plan).
implementing management plans	6.1.7.3. Interviews with enterprise specialists.
implementing management plans	6.1.7.4. Field inspection
their habitats (e.g. nesting and feeding areas).	ect rare, threatened and endangered species and Conservation zones and protection areas shall be ity of forest management and the uniqueness of
controlled	jishing, irupping una conceiing shan ve
Indicators	Means of verification
6.2.1. The enterprise has compiled a list of	6.2.1.1. Red data books of rare, threatened and
rare, threatened and endangered species as	endangered species of the Russian Federation and
well as species vulnerable and sensitive to	regions of the Russian Federation or respective
disturbances occurring in the management	official lists (perechen).
area and their typical habitats. The lists	6.2.1.2. Lists of relevant species occurring in the
should be based on federal or regional red	area.
data books and consider species, which can be	6.2.1.3. Lists and key characteristics of likely
threatened by management activities (see	habitats of the relevant species occurring in the
Annex C)	area
6.2.2. The enterprise collects available	6.2.2.1. Review of available materials on rare,
information on the occurrence of <i>key</i>	threatened and endangered species, including
biotopes: habitats critical for rare, threatened	maps.
and endangered species of plants, fungi and	6.2.2.2. Methods for identification of rare,
invertebrates as well as for life cycles	threatened and endangered species.
(reproduction, raising young animals,	6.2.2.3. Interviews with enterprise specialists.
fattening, rest, migration etc.) of vertebrate	6.2.2.4. Interviews with stakeholders
species occurring in the area.	
N. C. T. J. J. C. C. C. L. L. L. L. C.	
Note: The <i>key biotopes</i> may include habitats with	
the high probability of the non-accidental occurrence of <i>rare</i> , <i>threatened</i> , <i>endangered</i> , as	
<u> </u>	
·	
Endangered Plants, Animals and Fungi and	
Endangered Plants, Animals and Fungi and Identification and Protection of Key Stand	
Endangered Plants, Animals and Fungi and Identification and Protection of Key Stand Elements during Harvesting	
Identification and Protection of Key Stand	6.2.3.1. Methods for identification of rare,
Identification and Protection of Key Stand Elements during Harvesting	6.2.3.1. Methods for identification of rare, threatened and endangered species.
Identification and Protection of Key Stand Elements during Harvesting 6.2.3. The enterprise conducts additional field	,
Identification and Protection of Key Stand Elements during Harvesting 6.2.3. The enterprise conducts additional field surveys and/or uses other methods for	threatened and endangered species.
Identification and Protection of Key Stand Elements during Harvesting 6.2.3. The enterprise conducts additional field surveys and/or uses other methods for identification of key biotopes consistent with	threatened and endangered species. 6.2.3.2. Materials of field surveys.
Identification and Protection of Key Stand Elements during Harvesting 6.2.3. The enterprise conducts additional field surveys and/or uses other methods for identification of key biotopes consistent with Indicator 6.2.1, taking into account Indicator	threatened and endangered species. 6.2.3.2. Materials of field surveys. 6.2.3.3. Interviews with enterprise specialists.
Identification and Protection of Key Stand Elements during Harvesting 6.2.3. The enterprise conducts additional field surveys and/or uses other methods for identification of key biotopes consistent with Indicator 6.2.1, taking into account Indicator 6.2.2 and measures on biodiversity	threatened and endangered species. 6.2.3.2. Materials of field surveys. 6.2.3.3. Interviews with enterprise specialists.
Identification and Protection of Key Stand Elements during Harvesting 6.2.3. The enterprise conducts additional field surveys and/or uses other methods for identification of key biotopes consistent with Indicator 6.2.1, taking into account Indicator 6.2.2 and measures on biodiversity conservation at the stand level (harvest area) (see Indicator 6.3.7).	threatened and endangered species. 6.2.3.2. Materials of field surveys. 6.2.3.3. Interviews with enterprise specialists.
Identification and Protection of Key Stand Elements during Harvesting 6.2.3. The enterprise conducts additional field surveys and/or uses other methods for identification of key biotopes consistent with Indicator 6.2.1, taking into account Indicator 6.2.2 and measures on biodiversity conservation at the stand level (harvest area) (see Indicator 6.3.7).  Note: See further Annex C, sections Identification	threatened and endangered species. 6.2.3.2. Materials of field surveys. 6.2.3.3. Interviews with enterprise specialists.
Identification and Protection of Key Stand Elements during Harvesting 6.2.3. The enterprise conducts additional field surveys and/or uses other methods for identification of key biotopes consistent with Indicator 6.2.1, taking into account Indicator 6.2.2 and measures on biodiversity conservation at the stand level (harvest area) (see Indicator 6.3.7).  Note: See further Annex C, sections Identification and Protection of Habitats of Rare, Threatened,	threatened and endangered species. 6.2.3.2. Materials of field surveys. 6.2.3.3. Interviews with enterprise specialists.
Identification and Protection of Key Stand Elements during Harvesting 6.2.3. The enterprise conducts additional field surveys and/or uses other methods for identification of key biotopes consistent with Indicator 6.2.1, taking into account Indicator 6.2.2 and measures on biodiversity conservation at the stand level (harvest area) (see Indicator 6.3.7).  Note: See further Annex C, sections Identification	threatened and endangered species. 6.2.3.2. Materials of field surveys. 6.2.3.3. Interviews with enterprise specialists.
well as vulnerable and care demanding species (see Annex C, sections Identification and Protection of Habitats of Rare, Threatened and	

6.2.4. Identified <i>critical habitats</i> with high concentration of <i>rare</i> , <i>threatened and endangered species</i> of plants, animals and fungi ( <i>key biotopes</i> ) are mapped	
	6.2.4.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest
fungi (key hiotones) are manned	management plan).
	6.2.4.2. Materials of field surveys, maps
6.2.5. The enterprise has developed a	<b>6.2.5.1.</b> System of measures for protection of
system of measures for protection of key	key biotopes.
biotopes of rare, threatened and endangered	<b>6.2.5.2.</b> Interviews with enterprise specialists.
species.	6.2.5.3. Interviews with stakeholders
Notes: Measures on protection of <i>rare</i> ,	
threatened and endangered species may	
completely ban or restrict management	
activities in identified sites of occurrence of	
such species and in habitats with the high	
probability of the non-accidental occurrence of	
rare, threatened, endangered as well as vulnerable and care demanding species. See	
further Annex C, sections Identification and	
Protection of Habitats of Rare, Threatened and	
Endangered Plants, Animals and Fungi and	
Identification and Protection of Key Stand	
Elements during Harvesting	
<b>6.2.6.</b> The enterprise implements measures	<b>6.2.6.1.</b> System of measures for protection of
for the protection of rare, threatened and	key biotopes.
endangered species in protected sites and	6.2.6.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest
•	
	•
6.2.7. The enterprise has compiled a list of	
<u> </u>	
•	•
•	<u> </u>
-	0 01
30 <b>313</b> 110 110 110 110 110 110 110 110 110 11	•
Notes: Examples of <i>kev biotopes</i> for vertebrates	
are natural outcrops of salt-bearing rocks, rock	<u> </u>
	6.2.7.5. Interviews with representatives of societies
outcrops, swamps and sparse forests, burnt and	of hunters and fishermen
-	of figure in the figure of the first of the
outcrops, swamps and sparse forests, burnt and standing deadwood areas, areas rich with berries, bear lairs, places of winter concentration of	
outcrops, swamps and sparse forests, burnt and standing deadwood areas, areas rich with berries,	
outcrops, swamps and sparse forests, burnt and standing deadwood areas, areas rich with berries, bear lairs, places of winter concentration of	6.2.8.1. System of measures for protection of key
outcrops, swamps and sparse forests, burnt and standing deadwood areas, areas rich with berries, bear lairs, places of winter concentration of hoofed animals and nesting grounds of large birds	6.2.8.1. System of measures for protection of key biotopes of game species.
outcrops, swamps and sparse forests, burnt and standing deadwood areas, areas rich with berries, bear lairs, places of winter concentration of hoofed animals and nesting grounds of large birds 6.2.8. The enterprise has developed a system	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
outcrops, swamps and sparse forests, burnt and standing deadwood areas, areas rich with berries, bear lairs, places of winter concentration of hoofed animals and nesting grounds of large birds 6.2.8. The enterprise has developed a system of measures for protecting <i>key biotopes</i> of	biotopes of game species.
outcrops, swamps and sparse forests, burnt and standing deadwood areas, areas rich with berries, bear lairs, places of winter concentration of hoofed animals and nesting grounds of large birds 6.2.8. The enterprise has developed a system of measures for protecting <i>key biotopes</i> of game species, while taking into account	biotopes of game species. 6.2.8.2. Interviews with enterprise specialists.
6.2.7. The enterprise has compiled a list of main game species occurring in the management area and their <i>key biotopes</i> , taking into account proposals by game specialists and authorized representatives of societies of hunters and fishermen.  Notes: Examples of <i>key biotopes</i> for vertebrates	inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest management plan). 6.2.6.3. Harvesting documents (forest declarations, harvest permits or orders), including maps. 6.2.6.4. Interviews with enterprise specialists. 6.2.6.5. Field inspection 6.2.7.1. Lists of game species and their potential key biotopes. 6.2.7.2. Plans of management operations, technological maps. 6.2.7.3. Documentation regarding protected sites. 6.2.7.4. Evidence of communication, reports and minutes of meetings with game specialists and representatives of societies of hunters and fishermen.

6.2.9. The enterprise implements measures for protection of <i>key biotopes</i> of game species in <i>protected sites</i> and voluntarily provides protection of newly identified <i>key biotopes</i>	<ul> <li>6.2.9.1. System of measures for protection of key biotopes of game species.</li> <li>6.2.9.2. Summaries of activities.</li> <li>6.2.9.3. Interviews with local communities.</li> <li>6.2.9.4. Interviews with fishery and hunting inspectors.</li> <li>6.2.9.5. Interviews with representatives of societies of hunters and fishermen.</li> <li>6.2.9.6. Interviews with enterprise specialists.</li> <li>6.2.9.7. Field inspection</li> </ul>
6.2.10. The enterprise has protected sites with management restrictions, which provide protection of HCVF, representative samples of existing ecosystems and sites with high concentration of rare, threatened and endangered plants as well as areas of special significance for life cycles of animals.  Note: Protected sites may include existing and	<ul><li>6.2.10.1. Documents regarding protected sites.</li><li>6.2.10.2. Maps.</li><li>6.2.10.3. Field inspection</li></ul>
candidate protected areas (see <i>Annex D</i> ); important bird areas of Russia (see <i>Annex E</i> ); Ramsar wetlands (see <i>Annex E</i> ); <i>OZU</i> and <i>protective forests</i> , including candidate areas for ecological networks; and other areas voluntarily set aside by the enterprise. See further <i>Annex C</i> , Criterion 6.4, Principle 9, and <i>Annex E</i> , section <i>HCVF</i> , <i>Representative Samples of Existing Ecosystems and Ecological Networks</i>	
6.2.11. The enterprise promotes establishment or has plans to establish <i>protected sites</i> ( <i>protective forests</i> , <i>OZU</i> or protected areas)	<ul> <li>6.2.11.1. Proposals on establishment of protected sites, including maps.</li> <li>6.2.11.2. Evidences of communication and minutes of meetings with stakeholders.</li> <li>6.2.11.3. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest management plan).</li> <li>6.2.11.4. Interviews with enterprise specialists.</li> <li>6.2.11.5. Interviews with stakeholders</li> </ul>
6.2.12. Forest workers are familiar with materials about <i>rare</i> , <i>threatened and endangered species</i> and major game species occurring in the area, their typical <i>key biotopes</i> as well as measures on protection of these species	6.2.12.1. Lists of rare, threatened and endangered species and game species occurring in the area, their key biotopes and protection measures. 6.2.12.2. Records of meetings and field trainings for staff (programs of courses, lists of participants). 6.2.12.3. Interviews with staff. 6.2.12.4. Interviews with enterprise managers
6.2.13. The enterprise in cooperation with relevant agencies and when necessary NGOs implements measures to control hunting and fishing at the area (including control of forest roads)	<ul> <li>6.2.13.1. Records of measures undertaken to protect animals and control hunting and fishing.</li> <li>6.2.13.2. Interviews with fishery and hunting inspectors.</li> <li>6.2.13.3. Interviews with enterprise managers.</li> <li>6.2.13.4. Field inspection</li> </ul>

Criteria 6.3. Ecological functions and values shall be maintained intact, enhanced, or restored, including: a) Forest regeneration and succession, b) Genetic species, and ecosystem diversity, c) Natural cycles that affect the productivity of the forest ecosystem Means of verification **Indicators** 6.3.1. The main ecological parameters of the 6.3.1.1. Lists of tree species whose logging is forest condition have been identified, such as prohibited by federal and regional regulations and forested area, burnt areas, the area of dead rare forest types. 6.3.1.2. List of main ecological parameters of the stands and the share of stands with tree species whose logging is prohibited by federal forest condition and regional regulations and forest types rare in the area. Note: In the taiga zone of European Russia rare forests types can be stands with noticeable admixture of noble broadleaf species (oak, elm, ash, linden, maple and alike), Siberian larch or Siberian pine. See further *Annexes B* and *C* 6.3.2. Data on the main ecological parameters 6.3.2.1. Forest inventory materials. of the forest condition are regularly collected 6.3.2.2. Records of annually collected data 6.3.3.1. List of areas degraded by management 6.3.3. Forest areas degraded by management activities (long unregenerated harvest areas activities. and burnt areas, eroded areas, areas exempted 6.3.3.2. Maps. from the forest lands etc.) are identified and 6.3.3.3. Inventory of forest areas exempted from marked in maps the forest fund (for the district level forest management administration unit) 6.3.4. The enterprise contributes to the 6.3.4.1. Records of restoration and reclamation restoration of *forest lands degraded* by activities of damaged forest lands. management activities 6.3.4.2. Field inspection 6.3.5. When choosing methods of harvesting 6.3.5.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest and other silvicultural operations, the inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest enterprise strives to mimic natural dynamics management plan). of a particular forest and to consider natural 6.3.5.2. Rationale for harvesting and silvicultural landscape borders. techniques. 6.3.5.3. Interviews with researchers and forest Note: Harvesting should not mimic catastrophic surveyors. disturbances of low frequency (e.g. large-scale 6.3.5.4. Field inspection fires characterized by destruction of almost all stand) (see Annex C, section Preservation and Maintenance of Ecological Functions and Values during Harvesting) 6.3.6. The enterprise has a program to 6.3.6.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest

# switch over from large-size clearcuts to inventory materials) or proekt osvoveniya narrow clear-strip cuts and/or selection cuts (forest management plan). in relevant forest types. 6.3.6.2. Program to switch over to narrow clearstrip cuts and/or selection cuts. Note: see further *Annex C*, section *Preservation* **6.3.6.3.** Share of harvesting without the use of and Maintenance of Ecological Functions and clearcuts. Values during Harvesting **6.3.6.4.** Interviews with stakeholders

6.3.7. The respective program is being implemented	6.3.7.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest management plan). 6.3.7.2. Program to switch over to narrow clear-strip cuts and/or selection cuts. 6.3.7.3. Document on implementation of the program. 6.3.7.4. Share of harvesting without the use of clearcuts. 6.3.7.5. Field inspection
<ul> <li>6.3.8. Clearcuts should be implemented leaving residual trees (trees and their groups, or key stand elements) that are wind resistant and do not create a safety hazard at forestry operations), especially if their logging and removal are not justified for commercial and sanitary reasons. Residual trees should represent the following: <ul> <li>seed trees of target species;</li> <li>old trees of non-target species;</li> <li>large trees with holes;</li> <li>trees with large bird nests;</li> <li>veteran trees whose age noticeably exceeds the average age of the main canopy;</li> <li>tree species rare in this area;</li> <li>wind resistant dying trees and snags located at the distance from roads, landings as well as such trees left within clumps and groups.</li> </ul> </li> <li>Note: see Annex C, section Preservation and Maintenance of Ecological Functions and</li> </ul>	6.3.8.1. Administrative regulations and written operating guidelines. 6.3.8.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest management plan). 6.3.8.3. Harvesting documents areas (forest declaration, harvesting permits or orders), including maps. 6.3.8.4. Interviews with staff. 6.3.8.5. Field inspection
Values during Harvesting) 6.3.9. Harvesting is implemented in a way to ensure natural regeneration of target tree species, while preserving other species occurring in the natural forest. Artificial regeneration is used only in situations when forest regeneration cannot be achieved over a long period of time	<ul> <li>6.3.9.1. Administrative regulations and written operating guidelines.</li> <li>6.3.9.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest management plan).</li> <li>6.3.9.3. Records of regeneration monitoring.</li> <li>6.3.9.4. Field inspection</li> </ul>

Criteria 6.4. Representative samples of existing ecosystems within the landscape shall be

protected in their natural state and recorded on operations and the uniqueness of the affected re	
Indicators	Means of verification
<ul> <li>6.4.1. The main gaps in the network of protected sites (representative samples of existing ecosystems) have been identified. Such a network should provide preservation of all biodiversity of local flora and fauna, landscapes, ecosystems and habitat types. The gap analysis should assess to what extent the existing protected sites network:</li> <li>includes all types of ecosystems and landscapes occurring within the area (i.e. is representative);</li> <li>provides protection of regionally and locally rare and threatened types of ecosystems and landscapes; and</li> <li>provides species settling and migration (connectivity).</li> </ul>	6.4.1.1. Forest inventory materials. 6.4.1.2. Analytic materials with maps. 6.4.1.3. Interviews with enterprise specialists
Notes: Representative samples of existing ecosystems may include existing and candidate protected areas, protective forests, relatively large OZU, including candidate areas for ecological networks, and voluntarily set aside forest areas (see further Annex E. High Conservation Value Forests, section HCVF, Representative Samples of Existing Ecosystems and Ecological Networks	
6.4.2. Additional representative samples of	6.4.2.1. Results of the gap analysis of the
existing ecosystems are being identified based on the gap analysis of the protected sites network at a landscape level (district level forest management administration unit)	protected sites network. 6.4.2.2. Records of operations. 6.4.2.3. Evidence of communication with stakeholders (non-governmental environmental organizations, forest surveyors, conservation biologists, indigenous peoples representatives)
6.4.3. Identified <i>representative samples of existing ecosystems</i> are described and marked in maps	6.4.3.1. Site descriptions. 6.4.3.2. Maps
6.4.4. Identified representative samples of existing ecosystems within the area of on-going forestry operations and road construction are marked on site with "Stop!" signs and restricting road signs	<ul><li>6.4.4.1. Maps.</li><li>6.4.4.2. Interviews with enterprise specialists.</li><li>6.4.4.3. Field inspection</li></ul>
6.4.5. Identified representative samples of existing ecosystems are protected by regimes tailored to their assets or such a regime is proposed	6.4.5.1. Site descriptions. 6.4.5.2. Evidence of communication with forest inventory enterprises and forest management administration. 6.4.5.3. Interviews with stakeholders

6.4.6. The management restrictions (regimes) in respective areas are being observed	6.4.6.1. Site descriptions. 6.4.6.2. Harvesting documents (forest declarations, harvesting permits or orders). 6.4.6.3. Interviews with stakeholders. 6.4.6.4. Field inspection
	red and implemented to: control erosion; minimize uction, and all other mechanical disturbances; and
protect water resources	
Indicators	Means of verification
6.5.1. The enterprise has written operating guidelines for forest workers aimed at reducing the risk of degradation of forest, soil and water resources; they describe practices that shall be avoided or minimized during	<ul><li>6.5.1.1. Administrative regulations and written operating guidelines.</li><li>6.5.1.2. Interviews with enterprise specialists</li></ul>
harvesting and other <i>silvicultural operations</i> and construction of forest roads and hydrotechnical installations in consistence with requirements of Indicators 6.5.3–6.5.12	
6.5.2. Staff are aware of the respective regulations and operating guidelines and are trained to implement them	<ul> <li>6.5.2.1. Administrative regulations and written operating guidelines and their availability to staff.</li> <li>6.5.2.2. Documentation of training programs, extension courses, visit training.</li> </ul>
	<ul><li>6.5.2.3. Interviews with enterprise specialists.</li><li>6.5.2.4. Interviews with staff</li></ul>
6.5.3. The choice of harvesting technique and other <i>silvicultural operations</i> shall take into account soil conditions at the <i>harvest area</i> in order to reduce the risk of degradation of soils due to damage, compaction and paludification, erosion development (in particular by suspending harvesting and timber removals from forest in periods when soil is wet, using only winter harvesting on moist and/or rich loamy and clayey soils, restricting the number of skid rows and landings on harvesting areas and reducing the areal extent of them)	6.5.3.1. Administrative regulations and written operating guidelines. 6.5.3.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest management plan). 6.5.3.3. Harvesting documents (forest declarations, harvesting permits or orders), including maps. 6.5.3.4. Interviews with enterprise specialists. 6.5.3.5. Field inspection
6.5.4. Utilization for cutting waste (its burning or removal from a harvesting area) is permitted when this measure is necessary for forest regeneration and fire or pest management	<ul><li>6.5.4.1. Administrative regulations and written operating guidelines.</li><li>6.5.4.2. Harvesting documents (forest declaration, harvesting permits or orders), including maps.</li><li>6.5.4.3. Field inspection</li></ul>
6.5.5. Timber hauling along lakes, streams, including beds of small rivers and streams as well as ephemeral streams, is prohibited	<ul><li>6.5.5.1. Administrative regulations and written operating guidelines.</li><li>6.5.5.2. Harvesting documents (forest declarations, harvesting permits or orders), including maps.</li><li>6.5.5.3. Field inspection</li></ul>

CCC F 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	
6.5.6. Fuel and oil storage and machinery /	6.5.6.1. Administrative regulations and written
vehicle parking are prohibited within water	operating guidelines.
protective zones and on the ice of streams and	6.5.6.2. Harvesting documents (forest declarations,
pools	harvesting permits or orders), including maps.
1	6.5.6.3. Interviews with staff.
	6.5.6.4. Field inspection
6.5.7. Construction and use of the drainege	
6.5.7. Construction and use of the drainage	6.5.7.1. Administrative regulations and written
system of forest roads should prevent	operating guidelines.
paludification and permanent rise of water	6.5.7.2. Design of roads and hydrotechnical
table in soils	constructions, including maps.
	6.5.7.3. Interviews with enterprise specialists.
	6.5.7.4. Field inspection
6.5.8. Construction of forest roads and bridges	6.5.8.1. Administrative regulations and written
should not disturb <i>habitats critical</i> for	operating guidelines.
lifecycles of animals (in particular by	6.5.8.2. Forest inventory materials with maps.
avoiding sensitive areas, restricting number of	6.5.8.3. Design of roads and bridges with maps.
	6.5.8.4. Harvesting documents (forest declarations,
water crossings, no water-crossing	,
construction during fish breeding period, and	harvesting permits or orders).
preserving natural ways of animal migration)	6.5.8.5. Interviews with enterprise specialists.
	6.5.8.6. Interviews with hunting and fishery
	inspectors.
	6.5.8.7. Field inspection
6.5.9. Relevant road signs should be installed	6.5.9.1. Interviews with enterprise specialists.
along all forest roads	6.5.9.2. Field inspection
6.5.10. Harvesting, other <i>silvicultural</i>	6.5.10.1. Administrative regulations and written
operations, construction of forest roads and	operating guidelines.
hydrotechnical installations (including	6.5.10.2. Forest inventory materials with maps.
· ·	6.5.10.3. Interviews with staff.
bridges) and the use of machinery and	
equipment should not lead to pollution of	6.5.10.4. Interviews with local communities.
nearby lakes, ponds and adjacent water	6.5.10.5. Interviews with protection and/or
protective zones	enforcement agencies in the sphere of management
	of natural resources.
	6.5.10.6. Field inspection
6.5.11. Harvesting, other <i>silvicultural</i>	6.5.11.1. Administrative regulations and written
operations, construction of forest roads and	operating guidelines.
hydrotechnical installations should not violate	6.5.11.2. Harvesting documents (forest
management restrictions (regime) in <i>protected</i>	declarations, harvesting permits or orders).
sites	6.5.11.3. Materials on protected sites with maps.
SHES	<u> </u>
	6.5.11.4. Interviews with enterprise specialists.
	6.5.11.5. Field inspection
6.5.12. Technological processes, machinery	6.5.12.1. Administrative regulations and written
and equipment are used in a way to minimize	operating guidelines.
damage of residual trees at harvest areas as	6.5.12.2. Harvesting documents (forest
well as of trees at adjacent forest patches	declarations, harvesting permits or orders),
	including maps.
	6.5.12.3. Interviews with enterprise specialists.
	6.5.12.4. Field inspection
	0.3.14.4. Piciu inspection

Criteria 6.6. Management systems shall promot	te the development and adoption of
environmentally friendly non-chemical method	s of pest management and strive to avoid the use
of chemical pesticides. World Health Organizat	tion Type 1A and 1B and chlorinated hydrocarbon
	r whose derivatives remain biologically active and
accumulate in the food chain beyond their inter	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
international agreement, shall be prohibited. If	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
training shall be provided to minimize health an	
Indicators	Means of verification
6.6.1. A strategy has been developed according	6.6.1.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest
to which biological control methods of pest	inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest
management are given preference in use over	management plan).
chemical control methods. The strategy should	6.6.1.2. Strategy of the pest management.
pay special attention to early detection of <i>pest</i>	6.6.1.3. Dynamics of area damaged by pests.
outbreaks and preventive measures	6.6.1.4. Interviews with enterprise specialists
6.6.2. Pesticides (chemicals used to control	6.6.2.1. Records of use of chemical and
pests) are used only if other non-chemical	biological methods of pest management.
methods of <i>pest management</i> have appeared	6.6.2.2. Dynamics of area damaged by pests.
to be ineffective	6.6.2.3. Interviews with enterprise specialists.
	6.6.2.4. Field inspection
6.6.3. Pesticides (chemicals used to control	6.6.3.1. List of permitted pesticides.
pests) are used only by authorization of a	6.6.3.2. Environmental impact assessment
relevant governmental agency according to	(OVOS) and/or ecological expertise
administrative regulations for their use	(ekologicheskaya ekspertiza).
C	6.6.3.3. Administrative regulations for the use
	of pesticides.
	6.6.3.4. Records of the use of pesticides.
	6.6.3.5. Interviews with enterprise specialists
6.6.4. The use of <i>pesticides</i> is controlled	6.6.4.1. Administrative regulations for the use of
of the tipe of pesticides is controlled	pesticides.
	6.6.4.2. Records of the use of pesticides.
	6.6.4.3. Interviews with enterprise specialists.
	6.6.4.4. Field inspection
6.6.5. Use of fertilizers in forestry is allowed	6.6.5.1. Documentation, including the basis upon
only in <i>plantations</i> , forest tree nurseries, and	which fertilizers have been employed.
* · ·	<u> </u>
on reforesting bare lands (e.g. abandoned	6.6.5.2. Interviews with enterprise specialists.
agricultural fields) as well as in reclamation of	6.6.5.3. Field inspection
degraded non-forest lands	
6.6.6. The enterprise implements health and	6.6.6.1. Health and safety regulations.
safety regulations for the use of chemicals (in	6.6.6.2. Records of health and safety instructions.
particular providing training and medical	6.6.6.3. Records of medical inspections.
inspection of workers)	6.6.6.4. Interviews with staff.
	6.6.6.5. Field inspection
Criteria 6.7. Chemicals, containers, liquid and	
shall be disposed of in an environmentally appr	opriate manner at off-site locations
Indicators	Means of verification
6.7.1. Chemicals, containers, liquid and solid	6.7.1.1. Regulations and operating guidelines
non-organic wastes, including fuel, oil and	for the management and storage of liquid and
ignitable liquids are stored and managed in	solid inorganic waste, including fuel and oil.
line with applicable administrative	6.7.1.2. Records of storage and management of
regulations	chemical wastes and containers.
	6.7.1.3. Interviews with enterprise specialists.
	6.7.1.4. Field inspection
	······································

6.7.2. Refilling and oil replacement in	6.7.2.1. Instructions for the use of machinery and
chainsaws, machinery and equipment are done	equipment.
in specially dedicated places, where the risk of	6.7.2.2. Interviews with enterprise specialists.
environmental pollution is low	6.7.2.3. Field inspection
6.7.3. Soil and water are protected from	6.7.3.1. Operating guidelines for the management
pollution during storage and refilling with fuel	and storage of liquid and solid inorganic waste,
and oil	including fuel and oil.
	6.7.3.2. Interviews with enterprise specialists.
	6.7.3.3. Field inspection
6.7.4. Places for storage and disposal of	6.7.4.1. Health and safety regulations.
chemicals, fuel and oil and waste are equipped	6.7.4.2. Operating guidelines for management and
in consistence with applicable health and safety	storage of chemicals, containers, liquid and solid
regulations	inorganic waste, including fuel and oil.
	6.7.4.3. Interviews with enterprise specialists.
	6.7.4.4. Field inspection
6.7.5. Industrial and household waste is	6.7.5.1. Operating guidelines for management and
managed in consistence with applicable	storage of chemicals, containers, liquid and solid
regulations	inorganic waste, including fuel and oil.
	6.7.5.2. Interviews with enterprise specialists.
	6.7.5.3. Field inspection
6.7.6. Waste from machinery and equipment is	6.7.6.1. Operating guidelines for management and
removed from the management area after	storage of chemicals, containers, liquid and solid
completion of works	inorganic waste, including fuel and oil.
	6.7.6.2. Interviews with enterprise specialists.
	6.7.6.3. Field inspection
6.7.7. When using machinery and equipment,	6.7.7.1. Specification of fuels and oils.
preference in use is given to environment	6.7.7.2. Instructions for the use of machinery and
friendly fuels and oils	equipment.
	6.7.7.3. Interviews with enterprise specialists.
	6.7.7.4. Field inspection
Criteria 6.8. Use of biological control agents sh	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
strictly controlled in accordance with national	
protocols. Use of genetically modified organism	
Indicators	Means of verification
6.8.1. Scientifically sound application of	6.8.1.1. Plans of forest protection activities.
organisms (entomophagous insects) as	6.8.1.2. List of used biological control agents.
biological control agents is only possible when	6.8.1.3. Records of the use of biological control
other methods of non-chemical <i>pest</i>	agents.
management are obviously ineffective.	6.8.1.4. Rationale for the use of biological control
Note: The use of higherinal countril accents has	agents.
Note: The use of <i>biological control agents</i> has some advantage over the use of <i>pesticides</i> .	6.8.1.5. Interviews with enterprise specialists.
However, in some case it may lead to adverse	6.8.1.6. Field inspection
ecological implications, especially when <i>exotic</i>	
entomophagous insects are used	
6.8.2. <i>Biological control agents</i> are used in	6.8.2.1. Regulations and operating guidelines for
consistence with applicable administrative	use of biological control agents.
regulations	6.8.2.2. Plans of forest protection activities.
	6.8.2.3. Interviews with enterprise specialists.
	6.8.2.4. Field inspection
t-	

significantly reduce harvesting levels in natural

forests)

602 C .: 11 1:0: 1	6001 T / 1/1
6.8.3. Genetically modified organisms are not	6.8.3.1. Interviews with enterprise specialists.
used	6.8.3.2. Plans of forest protection activities.
	6.8.3.3. Interviews with representatives of
	environment protection agencies
Criteria 6.9. The use of exotic species shall be c avoid adverse ecological impacts	arefully controlled and actively monitored to
6.9.1. The use of <i>exotic species</i> is only allowed	6.9.1.1. Forest inventory and historical materials,
for maintenance of man-made stands consisting	documents on planted forests.
of introduced species, which are of high	6.9.1.2. Interviews with enterprise specialists.
historical and cultural value (e.g. larch stands),	6.9.1.3. Field inspection
for urban gardening and in <i>plantations</i> (see	-
Principle 10).	
Note: The only exception is the use of <i>reintroduced</i>	
species, i.e. species that in historical times grew at	
the area (e.g. noble broadleaf species that have	
disappeared from some regions of European	
Russia) and for which special restoration measures	
are used 6.9.2. All available scientific information and	6.9.2.1. Scientific publications and practical
practical experience with respect to ecology	experience on ecology and use of the exotic
and environmental risks of the use of	species.
respective <i>exotic species</i> in local or close	6.9.2.2. Evidence of communication and
natural conditions are collected.	consultations with specialists in this sphere.
natural conditions are conceted.	6.9.2.3. Interviews with enterprise specialists
Note: This indicator is also applicable to <i>exotic</i>	oisizioi intervie wa with enterprise specialists
species, which are to be used in the plantations (see	
Indicator 10.8.3)	
6.9.3. The use of <i>exotic species</i> is controlled	6.9.3.1. Documents on planted forests of exotic
	species.
	6.9.3.2. Records of exotic species monitoring.
	6.9.3.3. Interviews with enterprise specialists.
	6.9.3.4. Field inspection
	or non-forest land uses shall not occur, except in
circumstances where conversion:	
a) entails a very limited portion of the forest m	
b) does not occur on high conservation value f	
c) will enable clear, substantial, additional, sec forest management unit	cure, long term conservation benefits across the
Indicators	Means of verification
6.10.1. Conversion of forests to <i>plantations</i> is	6.10.1.1. Rationale for establishment of
only possible when it occurs at less than 5% of	plantations.
the area.	6.10.1.2. Materials of OVOS and/or EE.
**	6.10.1.3. Interviews with enterprise managers.
Note: the establishment of a <i>plantation</i> should	6.10.1.4. Interviews with stakeholders
bring sustainable conservation benefits to the forest	
in this area as a whole in <i>long term</i> (e.g. it will	

6.10.2. Conversion of forest lands to other land categories, whose function cannot guarantee preservation of forest cover in the long term (except construction of roads required for access and local minerals pits), is only possible when it corresponds to official plans for development of the area (housing, road construction etc.) and is supported by local communities	<ul> <li>6.10.2.1. Rationale for conversion of forest lands.</li> <li>6.10.2.2. Evidence of the legality of conversion.</li> <li>6.10.2.3. Interviews with enterprise managers.</li> <li>6.10.2.4. Interviews with local communities.</li> <li>6.10.2.5. Interviews with local authorities</li> </ul>
6.10.3. The enterprise does not convert high	6.10.3.1. Completed assessment of Principle 9.
conservation value forests to <i>plantations</i>	6.10.3.2. Maps of HCVF.
	6.10.3.3. Interviews with enterprise managers.
(10.4 The and annuity described as	6.10.3.4. Interviews with stakeholders
6.10.4. The enterprise does not initiate	6.10.4.1. Rationale for conversion of forest lands.
conversion of HCVF to lands of other categories, whose function cannot guarantee	6.10.4.2. Documents confirming the legality of
preservation of forest cover in <i>long term</i>	conversion.
(except construction of roads required for	6.10.4.3. Maps showing location of HCVF.
access)	6.10.4.4. Interviews with enterprise managers.
access)	6.10.4.5. Interviews with stakeholders
6.10.5. The enterprise undertakes efforts to	6.10.5.1. Rationale for conversion of forest
prevent such <i>conversion</i> from occurring,	lands.
when it corresponds to official plans of	6.10.5.2. Documents confirming the legality of
development of the area (housing, road	conversion.
construction etc.), especially when it is not	6.10.5.3. Evidence of communication, meeting
supported by local communities	minutes.
	6.10.5.4. Interviews with enterprise managers.
	6.10.5.5. Interviews with local authorities.
	6.10.5.6. Interviews with local communities

### PRINCIPLE 7: MANAGEMENT PLAN

A management plan – appropriate to the scale and intensity of the operations – shall be written, implemented, and kept up to date. The long term objectives of management, and the means of achieving them, shall be clearly stated

Criteria 7.1. The management plan and supporting documents shall provide:

- a) Management objectives;
- b) Description of the forest resources to be managed, environmental limitations, land use and ownership status, socio-economic conditions, and a profile of adjacent lands;
- c) Description of silvicultural and/or other management system, based on the ecology of the forest in question and information gathered through resource inventories;
- d) Rationale for rate of annual harvest and species selection;
- e) Provisions for monitoring of forest growth and dynamics;
- f) Environmental safeguards based on environmental assessments;
- g) Plans for the identification and protection of rare, threatened and endangered species;
- h) Maps describing the forest resource base including protected areas, planned management activities and land ownership;

i) Description and justification of harvesting techniques and equipment to be used

Indicators	Means of verification
7.1.1. The forest management plan	7.1.1.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest
formulates long-term objectives of forest	inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya
management for a rotation period and	(forest management plan).
describes their implementation methods	7.1.1.2. Interviews with enterprise managers.
for the next 40 years or at least the	7.1.1.3. Interviews with enterprise specialists
duration of lease	
7.1.2. The <i>forest management plan</i> contains	7.1.2.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest
information on forest resources	inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest
	management plan).
	7.1.2.2. Maps
7.1.3. The <i>forest management plan</i> contains	7.1.3.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest
information on environmental limitations	inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest
during forestry operations, including	management plan).
measures for protection of <i>HCVF</i> ,	7.1.3.2. Maps
representative samples of existing ecosystems,	
habitats of rare, threatened and endangered	
species and other key biotopes and	
biodiversity protection measures during	
harvesting operations (see Criteria 6.2–6.4)	

7.1.4. The <i>forest management plan</i> contains information on relative position and correspondence of different types of <i>protected sites</i> , including <i>representative samples of existing ecosystems</i> , and <i>HCVF</i> (see also criteria 6.4 and 9.1).  Note: Various types of <i>protected sites</i> fulfill different functions; therefore they should be identified separately. However, they may overlap with each other. In this case, the <i>forest management plan</i> should contain information on overlapping of <i>HCVF</i> , <i>OZU</i> , <i>protective forests</i> , protected areas (including candidate areas) and <i>representative samples of existing ecosystems</i>	7.1.4.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest management plan). 7.1.4.2. Maps, including those of HCVF, representative samples of existing ecosystems, protected areas, protective forests and OZU
7.1.5. The <i>forest management plan</i> contains information on the use and ownership status of land and forest resources and a profile of adjacent lands	7.1.5.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest management plan). 7.1.5.2. Maps
7.1.6. The <i>forest management plan</i> contains information on socio-economic conditions of enterprise activity consistent with the requirements of Indicator 4.4.4	7.1.6.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest management plan). 7.1.6.2. Materials of socio-economic assessments of impact. 7.1.6.3. Maps
7.1.7. The <i>forest management plan</i> provides rationale for the harvesting system consistent with the requirements of Principle 6	7.1.7.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest management plan. 7.1.7.2. Interviews with enterprise specialists
7.1.8. The <i>forest management plan</i> provides rationale for the <i>forest regeneration</i> system consistent with the requirements of Principle 6	7.1.8.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest management plan. 7.1.8.2. Interviews with enterprise specialists
7.1.9. The <i>forest management plan</i> provides rationale for the system of <i>pest management</i> consistent with the requirements of Principle 6	7.1.9.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest management plan. 7.1.9.2. Interviews with enterprise specialists
7.1.10. The <i>forest management plan</i> provides rationale for the forest protection system consistent with the requirements of Principle 6	<ul><li>7.1.10.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest management plan.</li><li>7.1.10.2. Interviews with enterprise specialists</li></ul>
7.1.11. The forest management plan provides rationale for annual timber removals (annual allowable cut) consistent with the requirements of Principle 6	7.1.11.1. Regulations on norms of forest use. 7.1.11.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest management plan). 7.1.11.3. Calculations of annual timber removals
7.1.12. The <i>forest management plan</i> provides for monitoring of the dynamics of forest growth consistent with the requirements of Principles 6 and 8	7.1.12.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest management plan). 7.1.12.2. Interviews with enterprise specialists. 7.1.12.3. Forest account materials

7.1.13. The <i>forest management plan</i> provides	7.1.13.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest
for monitoring of the dynamics of forest	inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest
condition consistent with the requirements of	management plan).
Principles 6 and 8	7.1.13.2. Interviews with enterprise specialists.
•	7.1.13.3. Forest account materials
7.1.14. The <i>forest management plan</i> contains	7.1.14.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest
a section on fire management	inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest
d section on the management	management plan).
	7.1.14.2. Lease agreement
7.1.15. The <i>forest management plan</i> contains	7.1.15.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest
v v	
information on scheduled management	inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest
activities	management plan).
	7.1.15.2. Maps
7.1.16. The prescribed harvesting techniques	7.1.16.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest
are aimed to minimize the adverse	inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest
environmental impact and use best available	management plan.
practices with respect to biodiversity	7.1.16.2. Interviews with enterprise specialists.
conservation consistent with the requirements	7.1.16.3. Interviews with stakeholders
of Principle 6	
	eriodically revised to incorporate the results of
monitoring or new scientific and technical inf	
environmental, social and economic circumsta	,
Indicators	Means of verification
7.2.1. Monitoring requirements described in	7.2.1.1. Summaries of monitoring records.
Criteria 8.1 are implemented	7.2.1.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest
Criteria 6.1 are implemented	
	inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest
	management plan)
7.2.2. The forest management plan is	7.2.2.1. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest
revised (not less than once in 5–10 years) to	inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya
take into account the results of monitoring	(forest management plan).
of changing environmental, social and	7.2.2.2. Records of monitoring and relevant
economic circumstances as well as new	recommendations (see Criterion 8.2).
scientific and technical information	7.2.2.3. Evidence of new scientific and
consistent with Criterion 8.4	technical data collection.
	7.2.2.4. List of changes made to the forest
	management plan (e.g. strategy, objectives,
	tasks and approaches to implementation).
	7.2.2.5. Interviews with enterprise specialists
Criteria 7.3. Forest workers shall receive adea	nuate training and supervision to ensure proper
implementation of the management plan	and a supply of the property o
Indicators	Means of verification
7.3.1. Forest workers are qualified to perform	7.3.1.1. Job descriptions/duty regulations.
their duties consistent with implementation of	7.3.1.2. Records of training and extension courses
forest management plan (see also indicators	(programs of courses, lists of participants).
4.1.3 and 6.5.2)	7.3.1.3. Interview with personnel manager.
	7.3.1.4. Interviews with staff.
	7.3.1.5. Diplomas, vocational training certificates
7.3.2. Forest workers are trained to extend	7.3.2.1. Records of extension courses (programs
their professional knowledge and skills not	of courses, lists of participants).
less than once in five years to ensure	
	7.3.2.2. Interview with personnel manager.
fulfillment of the <i>forest management plan</i>	7.3.2.2. Interview with personnel manager. 7.3.2.3. Interviews with staff

7.3.3. All forest work is supervised depending	7.3.3.1. Job descriptions/duty regulations.
on the difficulty and importance of the task,	7.3.3.2. Reports of job supervision.
by qualified specialists, to ensure fulfillment	7.3.3.3. Field inspection
of the forest management plan	
Criteria 7.4. While respecting the confidential	ity of information, forest managers shall make
publicly available a summary of the primary e	lements of the management plan, including those
listed in Criterion 7.1	
Indicators	Means of verification
7.4.1. The primary elements of the <i>forest</i>	7.4.1.1. List of confidential information.
management plan (including those listed in	7.4.1.2. Availability of summaries of the forest
Criterion 7.1) except confidential	management plan to public.
information are available to public	7.4.1.3. Interviews with stakeholders
7.4.2. There is a procedure for handling	7.4.2.1. Procedure for delivering non-confidential
inquiries by the public about non-confidential	information.
information of the forest management plan	7.4.2.2. Records of inquiries

## PRINCIPLE 8: MONITORING AND ASSESSMENT

Monitoring shall be conducted – appropriate to the scale and intensity of forest management – to assess the condition of the forest, yields of forest products, chain of custody, management activities and their social and environmental impacts

Criteria 8.1. The frequency and intensity of monitoring should be determined by the scale and
intensity of forest management operations as well as the relative complexity and fragility of the
affected environment. Monitoring procedures should be consistent and replicable over time to
allow comparison of results and assessment of change

and we comparison of resums and assessment of	change
Indicators	Means of verification
8.1.1. The enterprise has a documented	8.1.1.1. List of monitoring parameters.
monitoring program, which describes	8.1.1.2. Monitoring program.
parameters to be monitored (consistent	8.1.1.3. Methods of monitoring.
with the requirements of Criterion 8.2) and	8.1.1.4. Interviews with enterprise managers.
the frequency, procedures and	8.1.1.5. Interviews with enterprise specialists
responsibility for monitoring as well as the	
procedure for the use of data collected by	
independent organizations	
8.1.2. The monitoring program is revised if	8.1.2.1. Forest monitoring program.
necessary based on information collected as	8.1.2.2. Recommendations based on
well as on new sources of data or	implementation of the forest monitoring program
developments in monitoring technologies,	
while ensuring data comparability and the	
possibility to assess the dynamics of changes	

Criteria 8.2. Forest management should include the research and data collection needed to monitor, at a minimum, the following indicators:

- a) Yield of all forest products harvested.
- b) Growth rates, regeneration and condition of the forest.
- c) Composition and observed changes in the flora and fauna.
- d) Environmental and social impacts of harvesting and other operations.
- e) Costs, productivity, and efficiency of forest management

Indicators	Means of verification
8.2.1. Forest management includes data	8.2.1.1. Monitoring records and reports.
collection to monitor the ratio of actual to	8.2.1.2. Interviews with stakeholders.
estimated levels of harvesting of all types	8.2.1.3. Field inspection
8.2.2. <i>Forest management</i> includes data	8.2.2.1. Monitoring and reports records.
collection to monitor the ratio of <i>selection</i>	8.2.2.2. Field inspection
cuts and clearcuts by area, and its dynamics	
8.2.3. <i>Forest management</i> includes data	8.2.3.1. Monitoring records and reports.
collection to monitor the yield of different	8.2.3.2. Field inspection
types of forest products by category	
8.2.4. Forest management includes data	8.2.4.1. Monitoring records and reports.
collection and analysis to monitor the	8.2.4.2. Field inspection
dynamics of the average growth rate (total, by	
economically accessible forests, and by	
management units and sections)	
8.2.5. Forest management includes data	8.2.5.1. Monitoring records and reports.
collection and analysis to monitor the rate of	8.2.5.2. Field inspection
forest regeneration, by types and methods	

	T
8.2.6. <i>Forest management</i> includes data	8.2.6.1. Monitoring records and reports.
collection and analysis to monitor the tree	8.2.6.2. Field inspection
species, age and quality of stand	
8.2.7. Forest management includes data	8.2.7.1. Monitoring records and reports.
collection and analysis to monitor the area of	8.2.7.2. Interviews with stakeholders.
protected sites by types	8.2.7.3. Field inspection
8.2.8. Forest management includes data	8.2.8.1. Monitoring records and reports.
collection and analysis to monitor the scale of	8.2.8.2. Interviews with stakeholders.
biotechnical operations	8.2.8.3. Field inspection
8.2.9. <i>Forest management</i> includes data	8.2.9.1. Monitoring records and reports.
collection and analysis to monitor the scale	8.2.9.2. Interviews with stakeholders.
and type of forest protection and conservation	8.2.9.3. Field inspection
measures	
8.2.10. Forest management includes data	8.2.10.1. Monitoring records and reports.
collection and analysis to monitor the	8.2.10.2. Interviews with stakeholders.
population dynamics of protected species	8.2.10.3. Field inspection
8.2.11. Forest management includes data	8.2.11.1. Monitoring records and reports.
collection and analysis to monitor the	8.2.11.2. Interviews with stakeholders.
environmental and social impact of harvesting	8.2.11.3. Field inspection
and other silvicultural operations	
8.2.12. Forest management includes data	8.2.12.1. Monitoring records and reports
collection and analysis to monitor the total	
costs of forest management operations	
8.2.13. The enterprise analyze the efficiency	8.2.13.1. Monitoring records and reports
of forestry operations	
8.2.14. Results of research and monitoring	8.2.14.1. Monitoring records and reports.
activities are documented as reports	8.2.14.2. Research and monitoring reports.
	8.2.14.3. Interviews with monitoring staff
8.2.15. Research and monitoring reports	8.2.15.1. Monitoring records and reports.
contain proposals for changes in the	8.2.15.2. Proposed changes in the monitoring
monitoring program, conduction of additional	program, needs for additional research and data
research and necessary data collection	collection.
	8.2.15.3. Interviews with monitoring staff
$C_{i}$	14164

Criteria 8.3. Documentation shall be provided by the forest manager to enable monitoring and certifying organizations to trace each forest product from its origin, a process known as the "chain of custody"

Indicators	Means of verification
8.3.1. The enterprise has a procedure that permits it to trace each forest product from its origin to the point of sale (chain-of-custody)	8.3.1.1. Procedure for tracing product origin
8.3.2. The origin of all certified products is documented	8.3.2.1. Sale documents (invoices, freight notes, orders)
8.3.3. Sale and other relevant documents have a number of chain-of-custody <i>certificate</i>	<ul><li>8.3.3.1. Sale documents (invoices etc.).</li><li>8.3.3.2. Specifications.</li><li>8.3.3.3. Accompanying documents</li></ul>
8.3.4. The enterprise keeps a track of records on all certified forest products sold, as well as on products sold to the holders of chain-of-custody <i>certificates</i>	8.3.4.1. Sale records. 8.3.4.2. Certified products reports

8.3.5. All certified forest products in the	8.3.5.1. Marks or labels on certified wood	
enterprise's possession are easy to identify	products in the yard.	
because they have marks or labels and/or are	8.3.5.2. Separate storage for certified and non-	
stored separately from other products	certified wood.	
	8.3.5.3. Field inspection	
Criteria 8.4. The results of monitoring shall be	e incorporated into the implementation and	
revision of the management plan		
Indicators	Means of verification	
8.4.1. Recommendations of monitoring	8.4.1.1. Monitoring reports.	
reports are taken into account in the	8.4.1.2. Plan of harvesting and other management	
implementation of management activities	activities.	
	8.4.1.3. Interviews with enterprise managers	
8.4.2. Recommendations of monitoring	8.4.2.1. Monitoring reports.	
reports are taken into account when revising	8.4.2.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest	
the forest management plan, policies and	inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest	
operating procedures (see also criteria 7.2 and	management plan.	
8.2)	8.4.2.3. Policies and operating procedures.	
	8.4.2.4. Interviews with enterprise managers	
Criteria 8.5. While respecting the confidential	Criteria 8.5. While respecting the confidentiality of information, forest managers shall make	
publicly available a summary of the results of monitoring indicators, including those listed in		
Criterion 8.2		
Indicators	Means of verification	
8.5.1. The enterprise produces and makes	8.5.1.1. Availability of the summary of the	
available to the public a summary of the	results of forest management monitoring to the	
results of forest management monitoring,	public.	
except confidential information in	8.5.1.2. Interviews with enterprise managers.	
consistence with Criterion 8.2	8.5.1.3. Interviews with stakeholders	

# PRINCIPLE 9: MAINTENANCE OF HIGH CONSERVATION VALUE FORESTS

Management activities in high conservation value forests shall maintain or enhance the attributes that define such forests. Decisions regarding high conservation value forests shall always be considered in the context of a precautionary approach

Criteria 9.1. Assessment to determine the presence of the attributes consistent with High		
Conservation Value Forests will be completed, appropriate to scale and intensity of forest		
management		
Indicators	Means of verification	
9.1.1. It is determined whether the given	9.1.1.1. WWF Global 200 Ecoregions map, list of	
forest area is a territory (ecoregion)	respective HCVF occurring in the area.	
characterized by significant biodiversity of	9.1.1.2. Forest inventory and other materials.	
global or national importance.	9.1.1.3. Interviews with those involved in	
	identification process.	
Note: See further Annex E. High Conservation	9.1.1.4. Interviews with stakeholders	
Value Forests, section Categories of HCVF		
9.1.2. It is determined whether the given	9.1.2.1. Atlases and/or maps of large forest	
forest area is part of a large forest	landscape minimally disturbed by human	
landscape minimally disturbed by human	agency (intact forest landscapes).	
agency (or contains such a landscape).	9.1.2.2. Forest inventory and other materials.	
	9.1.2.3. Results of surveys in consistence with	
Note: See further Annex E. High Conservation	9.1.2.1.	
Value Forests, section Categories of HCVF	9.1.2.4. Interviews with those involved in	
	identification process.	
	9.1.2.5. Interviews with stakeholders	
9.1.3. It is determined whether the given	9.1.3.1. Atlases and/or maps of respective HCVF	
forest area contains rare, threatened or	occurring in the area.	
endangered ecosystems.	9.1.3.2. Forest inventory and other materials.	
	9.1.3.3. Interviews with those involved in	
Note: See further Annex E. High Conservation	identification process.	
Value Forests, section Categories of HCVF	9.1.3.4. Interviews with stakeholders	
9.1.4. It is determined whether the given	9.1.4.1. A list and maps of respective HCVF	
forest area provides basic services of nature in	occurring in the area.	
critical situations.	9.1.4.2. Interviews with those involved in	
N. G. G. d. A. F. W. J. G.	identification process.	
Note: See further Annex E. High Conservation	9.1.4.3. Interviews with stakeholders	
Value Forests, section Categories of HCVF 9.1.5. It is determined whether the given	9.1.5.1. A list and maps of respective HCVF	
forest area is of special significance for local	occurring in the area.	
communities, including religious, cultural,	9.1.5.2. Interviews with those involved in	
ecological or economic significance (sites that	identification process.	
local communities regard as more significant	9.1.5.3. Interviews with stakeholders	
when compared with surrounding forests).	7.1.3.3. Interviews with startification	
when compared with surrounding forests).		
Note: This should be done in part not covered by		
3.3.1. See further <i>Annex E. High Conservation</i>		
Value Forests, section Categories of HCVF		

ы Спиена У.2. I ne consultative portion of the ce	ertification process must place emphasis on the	
identified conservation attributes, and options for the maintenance thereof		
Indicators	Means of verification	
9.2.1. The enterprise has conducted wide	9.2.1.1. Evidence of consultations (minutes of	
and open consultations with stakeholders to	meetings, correspondence and other written	
identify HCVF and determine measures for	records).	
their protection and management	9.2.1.2. Interviews with stakeholders	
9.2.2. With involvement of <i>stakeholders</i> and	9.2.2.1. Documentation collected during	
on the basis of information in 9.2.1 criteria	stakeholder consultations.	
for identification and/or maps of HCVF	9.2.2.2. Evidence of adoption of stakeholder	
and a set of measures for HCVF protection	proposals on protection of HCVF or rationale	
and management have been prepared	for rejection of such proposals. 9.2.2.3. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest	
	inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya	
	(forest management plan), other materials.	
	9.2.2.4. List of criteria for identification and	
	maps of HCVF, the set of measures on HCVF	
	protection and management.	
	9.2.2.5. Interviews with stakeholders.	
	9.2.2.6. Field control	
9.2.3. Identification parameters of <i>HCVF</i> as	9.2.3.1. Documentation on identification of	
well as mapped <i>HCVF</i> are publicly available	HCVF, including maps.	
	9.2.3.2. Publicly available printed and web	
	publications, other materials.	
Cuitaria 0.2 The management plan chall inch	publications, other materials. 9.2.3.3. Interviews with stakeholders	
	publications, other materials. 9.2.3.3. Interviews with stakeholders  ude and implement specific measures that ensure	
the maintenance and/or enhancement of the a	publications, other materials. 9.2.3.3. Interviews with stakeholders ude and implement specific measures that ensure applicable conservation attributes consistent with	
the maintenance and/or enhancement of the a the precautionary approach. These measures	publications, other materials. 9.2.3.3. Interviews with stakeholders ude and implement specific measures that ensure applicable conservation attributes consistent with	
the maintenance and/or enhancement of the a	publications, other materials. 9.2.3.3. Interviews with stakeholders ude and implement specific measures that ensure applicable conservation attributes consistent with	
the maintenance and/or enhancement of the a the precautionary approach. These measures available management plan summary	publications, other materials. 9.2.3.3. Interviews with stakeholders ude and implement specific measures that ensure applicable conservation attributes consistent with shall be specifically included in the publicly	
the maintenance and/or enhancement of the a the precautionary approach. These measures available management plan summary Indicators	publications, other materials. 9.2.3.3. Interviews with stakeholders ude and implement specific measures that ensure upplicable conservation attributes consistent with shall be specifically included in the publicly  Means of verification	
the maintenance and/or enhancement of the at the precautionary approach. These measures available management plan summary  Indicators  9.3.1. Requirements of Indicator 9.2.2 are	publications, other materials.  9.2.3.3. Interviews with stakeholders  de and implement specific measures that ensure applicable conservation attributes consistent with shall be specifically included in the publicly  Means of verification  9.3.1.1. Documentation on mapping and assigning management regime to HCVF.  9.3.1.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest	
the maintenance and/or enhancement of the at the precautionary approach. These measures available management plan summary  Indicators  9.3.1. Requirements of Indicator 9.2.2 are	publications, other materials.  9.2.3.3. Interviews with stakeholders  ade and implement specific measures that ensure applicable conservation attributes consistent with shall be specifically included in the publicly  Means of verification  9.3.1.1. Documentation on mapping and assigning management regime to HCVF.  9.3.1.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest	
the maintenance and/or enhancement of the at the precautionary approach. These measures available management plan summary  Indicators  9.3.1. Requirements of Indicator 9.2.2 are	publications, other materials.  9.2.3.3. Interviews with stakeholders  ade and implement specific measures that ensure  applicable conservation attributes consistent with  shall be specifically included in the publicly  Means of verification  9.3.1.1. Documentation on mapping and  assigning management regime to HCVF.  9.3.1.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest management plan), other materials.	
the maintenance and/or enhancement of the at the precautionary approach. These measures available management plan summary  Indicators  9.3.1. Requirements of Indicator 9.2.2 are reflected in the forest management plan	publications, other materials.  9.2.3.3. Interviews with stakeholders  Ide and implement specific measures that ensure specificable conservation attributes consistent with shall be specifically included in the publicly  Means of verification  9.3.1.1. Documentation on mapping and assigning management regime to HCVF.  9.3.1.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest management plan), other materials.  9.3.1.3. Interviews with enterprise specialists	
the maintenance and/or enhancement of the at the precautionary approach. These measures available management plan summary  Indicators  9.3.1. Requirements of Indicator 9.2.2 are reflected in the forest management plan  9.3.2. For each site identified as an area	publications, other materials.  9.2.3.3. Interviews with stakeholders  Ide and implement specific measures that ensure specificable conservation attributes consistent with shall be specifically included in the publicly    Means of verification     9.3.1.1. Documentation on mapping and assigning management regime to HCVF.   9.3.1.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest management plan), other materials.   9.3.1.3. Interviews with enterprise specialists     9.3.2.1. Maps of areas containing globally or	
the maintenance and/or enhancement of the at the precautionary approach. These measures available management plan summary  Indicators  9.3.1. Requirements of Indicator 9.2.2 are reflected in the forest management plan  9.3.2. For each site identified as an area (ecoregion) containing globally or nationally	publications, other materials.  9.2.3.3. Interviews with stakeholders  ade and implement specific measures that ensure  applicable conservation attributes consistent with  shall be specifically included in the publicly  Means of verification  9.3.1.1. Documentation on mapping and assigning management regime to HCVF.  9.3.1.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest management plan), other materials.  9.3.1.3. Interviews with enterprise specialists  9.3.2.1. Maps of areas containing globally or nationally significant concentrations of	
the maintenance and/or enhancement of the at the precautionary approach. These measures available management plan summary  Indicators  9.3.1. Requirements of Indicator 9.2.2 are reflected in the forest management plan  9.3.2. For each site identified as an area (ecoregion) containing globally or nationally significant concentrations of biodiversity	publications, other materials.  9.2.3.3. Interviews with stakeholders  Ide and implement specific measures that ensure specificable conservation attributes consistent with shall be specifically included in the publicly  Means of verification  9.3.1.1. Documentation on mapping and assigning management regime to HCVF.  9.3.1.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest management plan), other materials.  9.3.1.3. Interviews with enterprise specialists  9.3.2.1. Maps of areas containing globally or nationally significant concentrations of biodiversity values, other materials.	
the maintenance and/or enhancement of the at the precautionary approach. These measures available management plan summary  Indicators  9.3.1. Requirements of Indicator 9.2.2 are reflected in the forest management plan  9.3.2. For each site identified as an area (ecoregion) containing globally or nationally significant concentrations of biodiversity values, a set of measures for biodiversity	publications, other materials.  9.2.3.3. Interviews with stakeholders  Ide and implement specific measures that ensure specificable conservation attributes consistent with shall be specifically included in the publicly    Means of verification     9.3.1.1. Documentation on mapping and assigning management regime to HCVF.   9.3.1.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest management plan), other materials.   9.3.1.3. Interviews with enterprise specialists     9.3.2.1. Maps of areas containing globally or nationally significant concentrations of biodiversity values, other materials.   9.3.2.2. Set of measures for biodiversity	
the maintenance and/or enhancement of the at the precautionary approach. These measures available management plan summary  Indicators  9.3.1. Requirements of Indicator 9.2.2 are reflected in the forest management plan  9.3.2. For each site identified as an area (ecoregion) containing globally or nationally significant concentrations of biodiversity	publications, other materials.  9.2.3.3. Interviews with stakeholders  Ide and implement specific measures that ensure specificable conservation attributes consistent with shall be specifically included in the publicly  Means of verification  9.3.1.1. Documentation on mapping and assigning management regime to HCVF.  9.3.1.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest management plan), other materials.  9.3.1.3. Interviews with enterprise specialists  9.3.2.1. Maps of areas containing globally or nationally significant concentrations of biodiversity values, other materials.  9.3.2.2. Set of measures for biodiversity conservation.	
the maintenance and/or enhancement of the at the precautionary approach. These measures available management plan summary  Indicators  9.3.1. Requirements of Indicator 9.2.2 are reflected in the forest management plan  9.3.2. For each site identified as an area (ecoregion) containing globally or nationally significant concentrations of biodiversity values, a set of measures for biodiversity	publications, other materials.  9.2.3.3. Interviews with stakeholders  Ide and implement specific measures that ensure specificable conservation attributes consistent with shall be specifically included in the publicly  Means of verification  9.3.1.1. Documentation on mapping and assigning management regime to HCVF.  9.3.1.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest management plan), other materials.  9.3.1.3. Interviews with enterprise specialists  9.3.2.1. Maps of areas containing globally or nationally significant concentrations of biodiversity values, other materials.  9.3.2.2. Set of measures for biodiversity conservation.  9.3.2.3. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest	
the maintenance and/or enhancement of the at the precautionary approach. These measures available management plan summary  Indicators  9.3.1. Requirements of Indicator 9.2.2 are reflected in the forest management plan  9.3.2. For each site identified as an area (ecoregion) containing globally or nationally significant concentrations of biodiversity values, a set of measures for biodiversity conservation has been developed.	publications, other materials.  9.2.3.3. Interviews with stakeholders  ade and implement specific measures that ensure  applicable conservation attributes consistent with  shall be specifically included in the publicly  Means of verification  9.3.1.1. Documentation on mapping and  assigning management regime to HCVF.  9.3.1.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest management plan), other materials.  9.3.1.3. Interviews with enterprise specialists  9.3.2.1. Maps of areas containing globally or nationally significant concentrations of biodiversity values, other materials.  9.3.2.2. Set of measures for biodiversity conservation.	
the maintenance and/or enhancement of the at the precautionary approach. These measures available management plan summary  Indicators  9.3.1. Requirements of Indicator 9.2.2 are reflected in the forest management plan  9.3.2. For each site identified as an area (ecoregion) containing globally or nationally significant concentrations of biodiversity values, a set of measures for biodiversity conservation has been developed.  Note: See further Annex E. High Conservation	publications, other materials.  9.2.3.3. Interviews with stakeholders  Ide and implement specific measures that ensure specificable conservation attributes consistent with shall be specifically included in the publicly    Means of verification     9.3.1.1. Documentation on mapping and assigning management regime to HCVF.   9.3.1.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest management plan), other materials.   9.3.1.3. Interviews with enterprise specialists     9.3.2.1. Maps of areas containing globally or nationally significant concentrations of biodiversity values, other materials.   9.3.2.2. Set of measures for biodiversity conservation.   9.3.2.3. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest inventory materials)	
the maintenance and/or enhancement of the at the precautionary approach. These measures available management plan summary  Indicators  9.3.1. Requirements of Indicator 9.2.2 are reflected in the forest management plan  9.3.2. For each site identified as an area (ecoregion) containing globally or nationally significant concentrations of biodiversity values, a set of measures for biodiversity conservation has been developed.  Note: See further Annex E. High Conservation	publications, other materials.  9.2.3.3. Interviews with stakeholders  Ide and implement specific measures that ensure specificable conservation attributes consistent with shall be specifically included in the publicly    Means of verification	

9.3.3. The respective set of measures is being	9.3.3.1. Set of measures for biodiversity conservation.
implemented.	
Note: See further Annex E. High Conservation	9.3.3.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest
Note: See further Annex E. High Conservation	inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest
Value Forests, section Management of HCVF	management plan, other materials.
	9.3.3.3. Written operation procedures.
	9.3.3.4. Harvesting documents (forest
	declarations, harvesting permits or orders),
	including maps.
	9.3.3.5. Plan of management activities.
	9.3.3.6. Interviews with stakeholders
	9.3.3.7. Field inspection
9.3.4. Large forest landscapes minimally	9.3.4.1. Maps and atlases of large forest
disturbed by human agency are conserved.	landscape minimally disturbed by human
N-A C ford A E III-L C	agency (intact forest landscapes).
Note: See further Annex E. High Conservation	9.3.4.2. A list of measures to protect such
Value Forests, section Management of HCVF	forests.
	9.3.4.3. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest
	inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya
	(forest management plan, other materials.
	9.3.4.4. Plan of management activities.
	9.3.4.5. Interviews with stakeholders.
	9.3.4.6. Field inspection
9.3.5. In cases when a large forest	9.3.5.1. Maps and atlases of large forest
landscape minimally disturbed by human	landscape minimally disturbed by human
agency cannot be completely conserved due	agency (intact forest landscapes).
to specific local social conditions, strict	9.3.5.2. Maps of approved strict conservation
conservation zones completely excluded	and buffer zones.
from road and forestry development	9.3.5.3. A list of measures to protect such
activities shall be established at part of its	forests.
area. Such zones should be surrounded	9.3.5.4. Evidence of communication with
with buffer zones where best available	stakeholders, including agreements, meeting
forestry technologies and practices with	minutes and letters.
regard to conservation of biodiversity and	9.3.5.5. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest
forest ecosystem are implemented.	inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya
101001 0005500m are implemented.	(forest management plan, other materials.
Note: See further Annex E. High Conservation	9.3.5.6. Plan of management activities.
Value Forests, section Management of HCVF	9.3.5.7. Interviews with stakeholders.
,,,	9.3.5.8. Field inspection
9.3.6. Conservation and management	9.3.6.1. Maps of approved strict conservation
regimes of strict conservation zones and	and buffer zones.
buffer zones, respectively, are observed	9.3.6.2. A list of measures to protect such forests.
	9.3.6.3. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest
	inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya
	(forest management plan, other materials).
	9.3.6.4. Plans of management activities.
	9.3.6.5. Interviews with stakeholders.
	9.3.6.6. Field inspection

9.3.7. Rare, threatened or endangered	9.3.7.1. Maps of rare, threatened or endangered
<i>ecosystems</i> are conserved through complete or	ecosystems if available.
partial restriction of forestry operations in	9.3.7.2. A list of measures to protect such
them.	ecosystems, which includes activities that are
	prohibited.
Note: See Annex E. High Conservation Value	9.3.7.3. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest
Forests, section Management of HCVF	inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest
	management plan, other materials.
	9.3.7.4. Plan of management activities.
	9.3.7.5. Interviews with stakeholders.
	9.3.7.6. Field inspection
9.3.8. The enterprise has developed measures	9.3.8.1. Maps of forest areas that provides basic
to provide maintenance or strengthening of	services of nature in critical situations if
characteristics of forest areas that provide	available.
basic services of nature in critical situations.	9.3.8.2. A list of measures to protect such areas.
busic services of nature in critical situations.	9.3.8.3. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest
Note: See further <i>Annex E. High Conservation</i>	inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest
Value Forests, section Management of HCVF	management plan, other materials.
	9.3.8.4. Plan of management activities.
	9.3.8.5. Interviews with stakeholders
9.3.9. Respective measures are being	9.3.9.1. Maps of forest areas that provide basic
implemented	services of nature in critical situations if
Implemented	
	available.
	9.3.9.2. A list of measures to protect such areas.
	9.3.9.3. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest
	inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest
	management plan, other materials.
	9.3.9.4. Plan of management activities.
	9.3.9.5. Interviews with stakeholders.
	9.3.9.6. Field inspection
9.3.10. The enterprise has developed	9.3.10.1. Maps of forest areas that are critical to
measures to protect values of forest areas that	local communities, including areas of special
are critical for <i>local communities</i> , including	religious, cultural, ecological or economic
areas of special religious, cultural, ecological	significance.
or economic significance.	9.3.10.2. A list of measures to protect such areas.
	9.3.10.3. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest
Note: This should be done in part not covered by	inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest
indicators 3.3.2–3.3.4. See further <i>Annex E. High</i>	management plan, other materials.
Conservation Value Forests, section Management	9.3.10.4. Plan of management activities.
of HCVF	9.3.10.5. Interviews with local communities
	and/or indigenous peoples groups.
	9.3.10.6. Interviews with ethnologists and/or
	specialists on regional history
	operation on regional motory

0.2.11.3.5	0.0.11.1.3.5
9.3.11. Measures are being implemented.	9.3.11.1. Maps of forest areas that are critical to
	local communities, including areas of special
Note: This should be done in part not covered by	religious, cultural, ecological or economic
Indicator 3.3.5	significance.
	9.3.11.2. A list of measures to protect such areas.
	9.3.11.3. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest
	inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest
	management plan, other materials.
	9.3.11.4. Plan of management activities.
	9.3.11.5. Interviews with local communities
	and/or indigenous peoples groups.
	9.3.11.6. Field inspection
9.3.12. Conservation or management	9.3.12.1. Materials on existing protected nature
restrictions (regime) in protected nature areas	areas and candidate areas, including maps.
are observed; candidate areas are excluded	9.3.12.2. Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament (forest
from road development and industrial use of	inventory materials) or proekt osvoyeniya (forest
natural resources.	management plan, other materials.
	9.3.12.3. Interviews with enterprise managers.
Note: See further Annex D. Protected Nature	9.3.12.4. Plan of management activities.
Areas	9.3.12.5. Interviews with stakeholders.
	9.3.12.6. Field inspection
9.3.13. Plans of management activities aimed	9.3.13.1. Plan of management activities aimed at
at <i>HCVF</i> conservation and management are	conservation and management of HCVF.
included in the summary of the <i>forest</i>	9.3.13.2. Availability of the summary of forest
management plan (see Criterion 7.4) and are	management plan to public.
available to the public.	9.3.13.3. Printed and web publications.
	9.3.13.4. Interviews with stakeholders
Note: See further <i>Annex E. High Conservation</i>	
Value Forests, section Monitoring of HCVF	
9.3.14. The summary of <i>forest management</i>	9.3.14.1. Summary of forest management plan.
plan (see also Criterion 7.4) contains	9.3.14.2. Maps.
information to what extent HCVF are	9.3.14.3. Interviews with stakeholders
protected in the network of representative	
samples of existing ecosystems (see Criterion	
6.4, including those included in <i>protected</i>	
areas, protective forests and OZU)	
Criteria 9.4. Annual monitoring shall be cond	ucted to assess the effectiveness of the measures

Criteria 9.4. Annual monitoring shall be conducted to assess the effectiveness of the measures employed to maintain or enhance the applicable conservation attributes

Indicators	Means of verification
9.4.1. The effectiveness of the measures	9.4.1.1. Records of annual monitoring.
employed to maintain or enhance the	9.4.1.2. Forest inventory materials, other
characteristics of <i>HCVF</i> is determined on the	materials.
basis of results of annual monitoring	9.4.1.3. Field inspection
9.4.2. The enterprise on request gives away	9.4.2.1. Evidence of correspondence and
materials that are necessary for regular and	meetings with stakeholders on this issue.
independent monitoring of the condition of	9.4.2.2. Interviews with enterprise managers.
the <i>HCVF</i> (description of borders and/or	9.4.2.3. Interviews with stakeholders
maps of lease, HCVF, representative samples	
of existing ecosystems etc.) to stakeholders	

### PRINCIPLE 10: PLANTATIONS

Plantations shall be planned and managed in accordance with Principles and Criteria 1–9, and Principle 10 and its Criteria. While plantations can provide an array of social and economic benefits, and can contribute to satisfying the world's needs for forest products, they should complement the management of, reduce pressures on, and promote the restoration and conservation of natural forests

Criteria 10.1. The management objectives of the plantation, including natural forest		
conservation and restoration objectives, shall be explicitly stated in the management plan, and		
clearly demonstrated in the implementation of	clearly demonstrated in the implementation of the plan	
Indicators	Means of verification	
10.1.1. There is a <i>long-term</i> (for a rotation	10.1.1.1. OVOS and/or environmental expertise	
period) plan for establishing and maintaining	(ekologicheskaya ekspertiza) of the plantation	
plantations in which their management	management plan.	
objectives are stated, including conservation	10.1.1.2. Plan for establishment and management	
and/or restoration of natural forests.	of the plantation.	
	10.1.1.3. Plan for conservation of natural	
Note: Areas for conservation of natural	biodiversity and/or restoration of natural forest.	
biodiversity and/or restoration of natural forest	10.1.1.4. Interviews with enterprise managers.	
should be located nearby the <i>plantations</i>	10.1.1.5. Field inspection	
10.1.2. Annual plan of management activities	10.1.2.1. Plan for establishment and management	
for the <i>plantations</i> and for areas designed for	of the plantation.	
conservation of natural biodiversity and/or	10.1.2.2. Annual plan of management activities.	
restoration of natural forest is consistent with	10.1.2.3. Interviews with enterprise managers	
the <i>long-term</i> objectives		
10.1.3. The respective plan is being	10.1.3.1. Plan for establishment and management	
implemented	of the plantation.	
	10.1.3.2. Annual plan of management activities.	
	10.1.3.3. Interviews with enterprise managers.	
	10.1.3.4. Field inspection	

Criteria 10.2. The design and layout of plantations should promote the protection, restoration and conservation of natural forests, and not increase pressures on natural forests. Wildlife corridors, streamside zones and a mosaic of stands of different ages and rotation periods shall be used in the layout of the plantation, consistent with the scale of the operation. The scale and layout of plantation blocks shall be consistent with the patterns of forest stands found within the natural landscape

naturat tanascape	
Indicators	Means of verification
10.2.1. The design and location of the	10.2.1.1. Plan for establishment and management
plantations should promote protection,	of the plantation.
maintenance and when necessary restoration	10.2.1.2. Maps showing plantations, natural
of ecological and social values of natural	forests, water protective zones, key biotopes and
forests in this area.	ecological corridors.
	10.2.1.3. Interviews with enterprise managers
Note: This can be achieved e.g. through	and/or plantation designer.
establishment or protection of water protective	10.2.1.4. Field inspection
(riparian) zones, key biotopes and corridors for	
wildlife and plants inside the <i>plantations</i>	

10.2.2. The size and layout of particular	10.2.2.1. Plan for establishment and management	
management units of the <i>plantations</i> should	of the plantation.	
be designed taking into account the structure	10.2.2.2. Maps showing plantations, natural	
of the natural ecosystems in the area	forests, water protective zones, key biotopes and	
	ecological corridors.	
	10.2.2.3. Interviews with enterprise managers	
	and/or plantation designer.	
	10.2.2.4. Field inspection	
10.2.3. <i>Plantations</i> whenever it is possible	10.2.3.1. Plan for establishment and management	
shall be established on lands disturbed by	of the plantation.	
human activity of previous times on which	10.2.3.2. Field inspection	
natural forest restoration is impossible (see		
also indicators 6.1.1, 6.3.3 and 6.3.4)		

Criteria 10.3. Diversity in the composition of plantations is preferred, so as to enhance economic, ecological and social stability. Such diversity may include the size and spatial distribution of management units within the landscape, number and genetic composition of species, age classes and structures

Indicators	Means of verification	
10.3.1. Monotony in the composition of	10.3.1.1. Plan for establishment and management	
plantations shall be avoided. This can be	of the plantation.	
achieved by varying the size and spatial	10.3.1.2. Interviews with local communities.	
distribution and structure of management	10.3.1.3. Interviews with stakeholders.	
units (their age, composition etc.). The design	10.3.1.4. Field inspection	
of the <i>plantation</i> should also take into account		
landscape peculiarities and needs of local		
people (e.g. hunting, fishing and collection of		
berries, mushrooms and nuts)		

Criteria 10.4. The selection of species for planting shall be based on their overall suitability for the site and their appropriateness to the management objectives. In order to enhance the conservation of biological diversity, native species are preferred over exotic species in the establishment of plantations and the restoration of degraded ecosystems. Exotic species, which shall be used only when their performance is greater than that of native species, shall be carefully monitored to detect unusual mortality, disease, or insect outbreaks and adverse ecological impacts

ccotogical impacts		
Indicators	Means of verification	
10.4.1. The enterprise conducts monitoring of	10.4.1.1. Plan for establishment and management	
increment, growing stock and condition of	of the plantation.	
trees used in the <i>plantations</i>	10.4.1.2. Records of monitoring.	
	10.4.1.3. Field inspection	
10.4.2. The use of <i>exotic species</i> is limited to	10.4.2.1. Plan for establishment and management	
nurseries where seedlings and Christmas trees	of the plantation.	
can be produced for sale	10.4.2.2. Interviews with enterprise specialists.	
	10.4.2.3. Field inspection	
10.4.3. When the adverse impact of <i>exotic</i>	10.4.3.1. Monitoring reports.	
species on the environment has been	10.4.3.2. Records of the use of measures to	
discovered (see Indicator 10.4.2), the relevant	eliminate implications connected with exotic	
methods to eliminate these implications are	species.	
implemented	10.4.3.3. Interviews with enterprise specialists.	
	10.4.3.4. Field inspection	

Criteria 10.5. A proportion of the overall forest management area, appropriate to the scale of the plantation and to be determined in regional standards, shall be managed so as to restore the site to a natural forest cover

Indicators	Means of verification
10.5.1. The share of <i>plantations</i> in the	10.5.1.1. Plan for establishment and management
management area does not exceed 10%	of the plantation.
	10.5.1.2. Field inspection
10.5.2. When establishing <i>plantations</i> , the	10.5.2.1. Plan for establishment and management
enterprise should provide restoration of the	of the plantation.
natural forest cover of the same area on	10.5.2.2. Evidences that the enterprise is not
degraded or deforested lands (if such are	responsible for degradation of lands.
available) within the same area.	10.5.2.3. Field inspection
Notes: Except when the enterprise is not	
responsible for degradation or deforestation of the	
area where <i>plantations</i> are being established (see	
indicators 6.3.3, 6.3.4 and 10.2.3)	

Criteria 10.6. Measures shall be taken to maintain or improve soil structure, fertility, and biological activity. The techniques and rate of harvesting, road and trail construction and maintenance, and the choice of species shall not result in long term soil degradation or adverse impacts on water quality, quantity or substantial deviation from stream course drainage patterns

Indicators	Means of verification	
10.6.1. The impact of <i>plantation</i> management	10.6.1.1. Records of monitoring of soil	
on soil conditions is monitored	conditions.	
	10.6.1.2. Field inspection	
10.6.2. The impact of the <i>plantation</i>	10.6.2.1. Records of control over water	
management on water quality and quantity	conditions.	
and water discharge pattern is monitored	10.6.2.2. Field inspection	
10.6.3. Requirements to road construction and	10.6.3.1. Plan for establishment and management	
maintenance and to <i>plantation</i> management	of the plantation.	
and management of nearby forests should be	10.6.3.2. See verifiers to relevant indicators	
the same as elsewhere on the <i>forest lands</i> (see	6.5.3–6.5.12.	
indicators 6.5.3–6.5.12)	10.6.3.3. Field inspection	
10.6.4. The establishment of <i>plantations</i> in	10.6.4.1. Plan for establishment and management	
water protective zones is prohibited	of the plantation.	
	10.6.4.2. Field inspection	

Criteria 10.7. Measures shall be taken to prevent and minimize outbreaks of pests, diseases, fire and invasive plant introductions. Integrated pest management shall form an essential part of the management plan, with primary reliance on prevention and biological control methods rather than chemical pesticides and fertilizers. Plantation management should make every effort to move away from chemical pesticides and fertilizers, including their use in nurseries. The use of chemicals is also covered in Criteria 6.6 and 6.7

Indicators	Means of verification
10.7.1. A set of measures to prevent fire is	10.7.1.1. Plan for establishment and management
being implemented	of the plantation.
	10.7.1.2. Dynamics of areas affected by fires
	10.7.1.3. Field inspection

10.7.2. A set of measures to prevent outbreaks	10.7.2.1. Plan for establishment and management	
of <i>pests</i> and diseases consistent with the	of the plantation.	
requirements of Criteria 6.6–6.8 is being	10.7.2.2. List of measures of pest management.	
implemented; the enterprise strives to	10.7.2.3. Records of the use of pesticides and	
minimize the use of <i>pesticides</i> and fertilizers	fertilizers.	
in the <i>plantations</i>	10.7.2.4. Dynamics of pest-affected areas.	
	10.7.2.5. Interviews with enterprise specialists.	
	10.7.2.6. Field inspection	
10.7.3. A set of measure to prevent spread of	10.7.3.1. Plan for establishment and management	
invasive exotic species is being implemented	of the plantation.	
	10.7.3.2. List of measures to prevent spread of	
	invasive exotic species.	
	10.7.3.3. Interviews with enterprise specialists.	
	10.7.3.4. Field inspection	

Criteria 10.8. Appropriate to the scale and diversity of the operation, monitoring of plantations shall include regular assessment of potential on-site and off-site ecological and social impacts, (e.g. natural regeneration, effects on water resources and soil fertility, and impacts on local welfare and social well-being), in addition to those elements addressed in principles 8, 6 and 4. No species should be planted on a large scale until local trials and/or experience have shown that they are ecologically well-adapted to the site, are not invasive, and do not have significant negative ecological impacts on other ecosystems. Special attention will be paid to social issues of land acquisition for plantations, especially the protection of local rights of ownership, use or access

Indicators	Means of verification	
10.8.1. The enterprise conducts monitoring of	10.8.1.1. Plan for establishment and managemen	
on-site and off-site environmental impact of	of the plantation.	
the <i>plantations</i> (e.g. natural regeneration,	10.8.1.2. Records of monitoring and operating	
invasiveness of exotic species, effects on	procedures.	
water resources and soil fertility) consistent	10.8.1.3. Interviews with enterprise specialists.	
with the requirements of Principle 8	10.8.1.4. Field inspection	
10.8.2. The enterprise conducts monitoring of	10.8.2.1. Plan for establishment and management	
the impact of the <i>plantations</i> on local welfare	of the plantation.	
and social well-being (e.g. local rights of	10.8.2.2. Materials of assessment of social	
ownership, use or access to natural resources)	implications.	
	10.8.2.3. Interviews with enterprise specialists.	
	10.8.2.4. Interviews with local communities	
10.8.3. Prior to planting any exotic species,	10.8.3.1. Plan for establishment and management	
for which no reliable scientific information	of the plantation.	
and practical experience consistent with	10.8.3.2. Materials of scientific publications on	
Indicator 6.9.2 is available, local trials should	the ecology and use of these exotic species.	
be conducted on a large scale to show that	10.8.3.3. Materials of field trials.	
such species are ecologically well-adapted to	<del>_</del> <del>_</del>	
the site, are not invasive, and do not have	10.8.3.5. Field inspection	
significant negative ecological impacts on		
other ecosystems		

Criteria 10.9. Plantations established in areas converted from natural forests after November 1994 normally shall not qualify for certification. Certification may be allowed in circumstances where sufficient evidence is submitted to the certification body that the manager/owner is not responsible directly or indirectly of such conversion

Indicators	Means of verification	
10.9.1. For the <i>plantations</i> established in	10.9.1.1. Documented historic evidences, forest	
areas converted from natural forests after	inventory materials.	
November 1994, the manner of their	10.9.1.2. Maps.	
establishment and the reasons that required	10.9.1.3. Interviews with enterprise managers	
conversion of natural forest are documented		
10.9.2. During establishment of the	10.9.2.1. Documented historic evidences, forest	
plantations (after November 1994) the	inventory materials.	
requirements of Criterion 6.10 have been	10.9.2.2. Maps.	
observed or the current manager or	10.9.2.3. Interviews with enterprise managers	
leaseholder is not responsible for the planting		

## **ANNEXES**

# Annex A. Basic Laws and Administrative Regulations in Forest Management and Environment Protection

### Land Code of the Russian Federation, No. 136-FZ, October 25 2001

The Land Code regulates relations with regard to use and protection of lands implying that land is a natural body, whose resources needs to be protected, a natural resource used in agriculture, forestry and other management activities, as well as real estate, ownership and other rights for land.

### Urban Planning Code of the Russian Federation, No. 190-FZ, December 29 2004

The Urban Planning Code regulates relations in the sphere of development, urban planning and growth, maintenance of urban and rural populated areas, development of engineering, transportation and social infrastructure, use of natural resource and protection of historical and cultural heritage and environment.

## Water Code of the Russian Federation, No.74-FZ, June 3 2006

The Water Code regulates the use of water resources and protection of water bodies. Proprietary issues related to trade with water bodies are regulated by civil laws in part not covered by the Water Code. The Water Code prescribes establishment of water and coastal protection zones with a width ranging from 50 to 500 m along all water bodies. Clearcutting inside the water protective zones and coastal zones is prohibited.

## Forest Code of the Russian Federation, No. 200-FZ, December 4 2006

The Forest Code regulates relations in the sphere of the use, protection, conservation and regeneration of forest resources. The Code prescribes that harvesting of forest resources cannot be undertaken by governmental agencies and local authorities. Commercial use of forest resources shall occur only on a paid basis.

## Federal Act On Protected Nature Areas, No. 33-FZ, March 14 1995 (edited on December 29 2004)

The Federal Act *On PNA* regulates relations in the sphere of organization, protection and use of protected areas to conserve unique and typical natural landscapes and features, natural landmarks, plants and animals and genetic resources as well as to research natural processes in the biosphere, to monitor its changes and to deliver environmental education.

## Federal Act On Wildlife, No. 52-FZ, April 24 1995 (edited on December 29 2004)

Federal Act *On Wildlife* regulates relations in the sphere of protection and use of wildlife and habitat protection to maintain biodiversity, to provide sustainable use of all its components and to conserve wildlife and its genetic fund as an essential element of the environment.

# Federal Act On State Environmental Impact Assessment, No. 174-FZ of November 23 1995 (edited on December 29 2004) (with amendments effective from January 1 2007)

Federal Act *On State Environmental Impact Assessment [Environmental Expertise]* specifies the procedure for environmental impact assessment. The state environmental impact assessment of the compliance of planned activities with the laws of the Russian Federation is an essential element of environmental assessment, without which any planned activities are prohibited.

According to changes made to the Act On State Environmental Impact Assessment effective from January 1 2007, plans for the use of water and forest resources, including forest survey materials, are no longer subject to SEIA. The new Forest Code prescribes (Article 89) that forest management plans are subject to state assessment according to a procedure established by the relevant federal agency. However, there is no clarity on what would be assessed under this procedure. The procedure for environmental impact assessment made for the enterprise's needs (OVOS) is still regulated by the Act On State Environmental Impact Assessment.

A set of key documents for the Act On State Environmental Impact Assessment includes:

- Decision of the Government of the Russian Federation *On Adopting the Procedure of State Environmental Impact Assessment [Environmental Expertise]*, No. 698, June 11 1996;
- Order of the State Committee for Environment Protection of the Russian Federation *On Adopting the Regulations for Assessing the Environment Impact Caused by Planned Management and Other Activities in the Russian Federation*, No. 372, May 16 2000.

# Federal Act *On Environment Protection*, No. 7-FZ, January 10 2002 (Edition as of December 29 2004 with amendments effective from January 1 2006)

Federal Act *On Environment Protection* specifies the legal basis of the national policy on environment protection to ensure balanced solution of socio-economic issues, to conserve favorable environment, protect biodiversity and natural resources in order to satisfy the needs of the present and future generations, and to provide environment law enforcement and environment safety.

# Annex B. Multilateral Environment Agreements and Basic Conventions of the International Labor Organization Ratified by Russia

## **Conventions of the International Labor Organization**

The International Labor Organization emerged with the League of Nations in 1919. It was founded to express the growing concern for social reform after World War I, and the conviction that any reform had to be conducted at an international level. After World War II, a dynamic restatement and enlargement of the ILO's basic goals and principles was made in the Declaration of Philadelphia. In 1946, the ILO became the first specialized agency associated with the newly formed United Nations Organization.

The ILO sets international labor standards as conventions and recommendations, providing minimum requirements to basic human rights (freedom of association, the right to organize and bargain collectively, the abolition of forced labor and child labor, and the elimination of discrimination in employment), labor administration, industrial relations, employment policy, working conditions, social security, occupational safety and health, employment of women, etc.

The ILO has a tripartite structure unique in the United Nations, in which employers' and workers' representatives have an equal voice with those of governments.

Russia ratified several ILO conventions. Some of them are important for meeting the requirements of FSC responsible forest stewardship:

- 1. ILO 87: Freedom of Association and Protection of the Right to Organize Convention, 1948 (participant since 1956);
- 2. ILO 98: Right to Organize and Collective Bargaining Convention, 1949 (since 1956);
- 3. ILO 100: Equal Remuneration Convention, 1951 (since 1956);
- 4. ILO 111: Discrimination (Employment and Occupation) Convention, 1958 (since 1961);
- 5. ILO 155: Occupation Safety and Health Convention, 1981 (since 1998).

ILO conventions (in Russian) can be found on the website of the ILO Subregional Office for Eastern Europe and Central Asia: <a href="http://www.ilo.ru/about\_ru.htm">http://www.ilo.ru/about\_ru.htm</a>.

Countries, which signed the conventions, shall make their national and regional labor and employment laws being in compliance with ILO standards.

According to the decision by FSC Board, all certificate holders should comply to a number of ILO conventions, even if the country has not ratified the conventions. The following ILO labor conventions have an impact on forestry operations and practices: 29, 87, 97, 98, 100, 105, 111, 131, 138, 141, 142, 143, 155, 169 and 182; and The *ILO Code of Practice on Safety and Health in Forestry Work*.

### **Convention on Biological Diversity**

FSC Criterion 1.3 demands to adhere to the provisions of binding international conventions, such as the *Convention on Biological Diversity* (CBD). CBD was signed in Rio de Janeiro (Brazil) in June 1992. Russia signed the Convention on June 13 1992 and ratified it by the Federal Act No. 16-FZ, February 17 1995.

CBD has three main targets: 1) the conservation of biological diversity, 2) the sustainable use of biological resources and fair and equal sharing of benefits arising out of the use of biodiversity resources. Some provisions of the Convention are directly covered by laws of the Russian Federation. FSC Principles 6–8 are directed to the implementation of CBD requirements.

### Convention on Wetlands of International Importance, Especially as Waterfowl Habitat

Russia is a party of the *Convention on Wetlands of International Importance, Especially as Waterfowl Habitat* (adopted in Ramsar on February 2 1971), also known as the Ramsar Convention. Under the Convention, some wetlands in Russia were granted with the Ramsar status. In accordance to the Land Code (Article 97), valuable wetlands may be considered as nature conservation lands, where operations that cause damage to nature may be considerably limited while environment conservation actions are encouraged. A decision to grant such status to a wetland is taken by the Government of the Russian Federation if the Secretariat of the Convention decides that the area nominated in accordance to the established procedure meets the relevant criteria.

### Convention Concerning the Protection of the World Cultural and Natural Heritage

The Convention Concerning the Protection of the World Cultural and Natural Heritage was adopted by UNESCO in Paris (France) on November 16 1972. The Convention was ratified by the Decree of the Presidium of the Supreme Soviet of the USSR No. 8595-XI, March 9 1988. It is aimed at conserving and popularizing landmarks of high importance for the humankind. The World Heritage Committee established as a follow-up of the Convention was charged to organize the protection and popularization of World Heritage Sites and to keep a list of properties having outstanding universal value from the historical, cultural, scientific, aesthetic, conservation, or natural beauty points of view and *The List of World Heritage in Danger*. World Heritage Sites consist of various level protected areas.

### **Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora (CITES)**

FSC Criterion 1.3 demands to fulfill to the provisions of binding international conventions, such as the *Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora (CITES)*. CITES has been signed in Washington DC (USA), March 3 1973. Its aim is to exercise control of international trade in specimens of wild animals and plants whose number has been undermined or can be undermined because they are popular objects of trade.

CITES entered in force in 1975. The USSR joined it in 1976. The Russian Federation as the successor of the USSR is a Party of the Convention since 1992. To protect rare species of animals and plants, the Convention controls their movement across borders between countries that are CITES Parties. The species covered by CITES are listed in three Appendices. Commercial trade in specimens listed in *Appendix II* is prohibited (although there are some exceptions). International trade in specimens listed in *Appendix II* is permitted but they may be imported or exported only if the appropriate document issued by the national Administrative body of CITES designated by the Governments of the signatory countries has been obtained. In Russia, this function is executed by the Ministry of Natural Resources (in the case of sturgeon, the Federal Agency for Fisheries of the Ministry of Agriculture). The List of mammals, birds, reptiles, amphibians, fish, invertebrates, and plants whose export, re-export, and import are regulated by the CITES was adopted by the 12<sup>th</sup> meeting of the Conference of the Parties (Santiago, November 2002).

In Russia, species under CITES are included in the Red Data Book of the Russian Federation (e.g. ginseng *Panax ginseng*, golden eagle *Aquila chrysaetos*, saker falcon *Falco cherrug*, Amur tiger *Panthera tigris altaica*) or are less rare species but illegal hunting of which thrives (eagle owl *Bubo bubo*, Siberian musk deer *Moschus moschiferus*, brown bear *Ursus arctos*, grey wolf *Canis lupus*).

### **United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change**

The *UN Framework Convention on Climate Change* has been opened for signature at the UN's Earth Summit in Rio de Janeiro (Brazil) in 1992. Its aim is to prevent global climate change

which is directly or indirectly caused by human activities, by controlling atmospheric concentrations of greenhouse gases. The Kyoto Protocol to the UN Framework Convention on Climate Change was adopted in Kyoto (Japan), December 11 1997 and has signed by Russia in New York, March 11 1999. The Kyoto Protocol determines the level of greenhouse gases emissions to be reduced by each Party. In accordance to the Protocol, developed countries should reduce emissions of carbon dioxide and five more greenhouse gases by 5.2% compared to the level of 1990. This figure should be reached from 2008 or 2012, at the latest. Russia has ratified the Kyoto Protocol, November 4 2004.

Responsible forest management can contribute to a solving this problem. By affecting carbon flows in the biosphere, depending on its condition, forest can both accumulate and emit greenhouse gases. It is important that a certified area shall contribute to the accumulation of organic carbon in overall. This objective is achieved by fulfilling Criteria 6.10 (restricting forest conversion to forest plantations or non-forest land uses), indicators of Criterion 6.5 (controlling erosion), as well as indicators of criteria 6.3 and 8.2 which require provision of timely forest regeneration.

## Pan-European Biological and Landscape Diversity Strategy

The Pan-European Biological and Landscape Diversity Strategy (PEBLDS) was adopted at the *Environment for Europe* Conference of Ministers of the Environment held in Sofia (Bulgaria) in 1995. PEBLDS is declared as a European contribution to the implementation of the *Convention on Biological Diversity* (1992). The Strategy is aimed at protection of biological and landscape diversity in Europe. Its objectives include:

- conservation, enhancement, and restoration of key ecosystems, habitats, species, and landscape features through creation and effective management of the Pan-European Ecological Network;
- sustainable management and use of the positive potential of Europe's biological and landscape diversity through making optimum use of social and economic opportunities at the local, national and regional levels.

PEBLDS does not aim to introduce new legislation or programs, but to integrate all initiatives concerning the biological and landscape diversity in the common Pan-European approach. The legal framework for PEBLDS is constituted by widely recognized international agreements and treaties, including the aforementioned ones. The Russian Federation also ratified the *Memorandums of Understanding Concerning Conservation Measures for the Slender-billed Curlew and Siberian Crane* under the *Bonn Convention*.

The Declaration of the Third Ministerial *Environment for Europe* Conference set a task to contribute to environment conservation both within and outside protected areas through creation and effective management of the Pan-European Ecological Network – a physical network of core areas and other natural objects connected by corridors and supported by buffer zones to facilitate the dispersal and migration of species.

The Kyiv Resolution on Biodiversity (2003) set Objectives 4 and 5 concerning the Pan-European Ecological Network:

- "4. By 2006, the Pan-European Ecological Network (core areas, restoration areas, corridors and buffer zones, as appropriate) in all States of the Pan-European region will be identified and reflected on coherent indicative European maps, as a European contribution towards a global ecological network.
- 5. By 2008, all core areas of the Pan-European Ecological Network will be adequately conserved and the Pan European Ecological Network will give guidance to all major national, regional and international land use and planning policies as well as to the operations of relevant economic and financial sectors."

# Annex C. Legal Framework for Protection of Rare, Threatened, and Endangered Species of Plants, Animals and Fungi

### Red Data Book of the Russian Federation

The **FSC Criterion 6.2** prescribes that the "Safeguards shall exist which protect rare, threatened, and endangered species and their habitats (e.g. nesting and feeding areas). Conservation zones and protection areas shall be established, appropriate to the scale and intensity of forest management and the uniqueness of the affected resources. Inappropriate hunting, fishing, trapping and collecting shall be controlled."

Lists of rare, threatened and endangered species exist for different levels: international, national and regional. The IUCN–World Conservation Union's Red Data Book has been historically the first in a series of such publications. It was prepared for the first time in 1963 and immediately received recognition at an international level by many national governments. The species list in the IUCN Red Data Book is regularly updated (Baillie *et al*, 2004). Species included in the *IUCN Red List of Threatened Species* shall be also protected at the national level.

Russia is considering ratification (adoption, approval and joining) of two conventions related to conservation of European species and currently participates in their work on issues relating to its competence. These are the *Convention on the Conservation of European Wildlife and Natural Habitats* (Bern Convention) and the *Convention on Migratory Species* (Bonn Convention).

Russia has also signed several bilateral agreements on environment protection, in particular on protection of migratory birds, with the USA, India, North Korea, Republic of Korea, Japan etc.

Besides that, lists of rare, threatened and endangered species can cover a particular biogeographical region. An example is the, well-known is the *Red Data Book of Eastern Fennoscandia* (Kotiranta *et al*, 1998) compiled by Finnish and Russian experts for Finland, Murmansk Oblast, Republic of Karelia and the northern part of Leningrad Oblast.

The first national Red Data Book in the USSR was presented in 1978 at the opening of the XIV IUCN General Assembly held in Ashkhabad.

On December 19 1997, the State Committee for Environment Protection of Russia (Goskomekologiya) issued the order No. 569 On Approving the Lists of the Fauna Objects Included in the Red Data Book of the Russian Federation and Excluded from the Red Data Book Data of the Russian Federation (with changes as of September 9 2004).

The volume of the *Red Data Book of the Russian Federation (Animals)* was published in 2001. Meanwhile the volume devoted to plants and fungi was last time officially published only in 1988 as the *Red Data Book of the Russian Soviet Federative Socialist Republic (Plants)*. The order by the Ministry of Natural Resources of the Russian Federation as of October 25 2005 No. 289 *On Approving the Lists of Flora Being Included in and Excluded from the Red Data Book of the Russian Federation* (as of June 1 2005) introduced some changes to red-listed species of plants.

It is worth noting that according to the decree of the government of the Russian Federation from August 13 1996, Russia joined the *Agreement on the Book on Rare, Threatened, and Endangered Species of Animals and Plants – The Red Data Book of CIS Countries.* 

The Red Data Book of Russian Federation lists rare and threatened species of animals, plants, and fungi which are native to and temporarily or permanently occur in the wild on the territory, continental shelf or marine economic zone of the Russian Federation and which require special governmental and legal actions within the competence of the executive authorities. Keeping and publishing the Red Data Book Russia fulfils part of its obligations within the frameworks of the Convention on Biodiversity (adopted in 1992 in Rio de Janeiro).

In the *Red Data Book of the Russian Federation*, there are six categories which classify all taxa and populations by risk of extinction:

- 0 most likely extinct;
- 1 endangered;
- 2 reducing in the number;
- 3 rare;
- 4 with uncertain status;
- 5 recovered and recovering.

The category of most likely extinct includes taxa and populations which historically occurred at the area of the Russian Federation but whose occurrence in the wild has not been confirmed (for invertebrates in the last 100 years and for vertebrates in the last 50 years). Endangered species are those taxa and populations whose numbers reduced down to the critical level so that they may extinct in the nearest future. Species reducing in the number include taxa and populations characterized by a continuing decline in number so that they may shortly enter the category of endangered species. Taxa and populations are considered rare if they are small in number and/or occur only within the limited area or sporadically over relatively large area. Taxa and populations that require special protective measures but are currently data deficient or do not fully meet the rest of the criteria are considered as species of uncertain status. Recovered and recovering species includes those taxa and populations whose number and extent of occurrence began to recover because of natural reasons or conservation measures undertaken so that they approach a condition when they do not require urgent measures for conservation and recovery.

At the national level, protection of rare and threatened species, besides listing in the Red Data Book, is regulated by a number of laws on nature protection and use of natural resources.

According to the Article 60 of the Federal Act No. 7-FZ *On Environment Protection* "Protection of rare, threatened and endangered species of plants, animals and other organisms":

- "1. In order to provide protection and account of rare and threatened species of plants, animals, and other organisms, the Red Data Book of the Russian Federation is established as well as Red Data Books of the administrative regions of the Russian Federation. Red listed plants, animals, and other organisms should be withdrawn from economic use. ... Any activity that leads to reduction in the number of such plants, animals, and other organisms and to deterioration of their environment is prohibited.
- 2. Procedures for protection of rare and threatened plants, animals and other organisms and keeping of the Red Data Book of the Russian Federation and Red Data Books of its administrative regions ... are set up by the environmental legislation."

According to the Article 24 of the Federal Act No. 52-FZ *On Fauna "Protection of rare and threatened objects of the fauna"*:

Rare and threatened objects of the fauna are listed in the Red Data Book of the Russian Federation and (or) Red Data Books of the administrative regions of the Russian Federation.

The activities that may lead to death, reduction in number or destruction of habitats of fauna objects enlisted in the Red Data Books are not permitted.

Legal entities and citizens performing any economic activity in the area of occurrence of red listed animals are responsible for protection and reproduction of these fauna objects according to the legislation of the Russian Federation and its administrative regions ...".

According to the Article 59 of the Forest Code No. 200-FZ "Protection of rare and threatened species of trees, shrubs, lianas and other forest plants":

"In order to provide conservation of rare and threatened species of trees, shrubs, lianas and other forest plants listed in the Red Data Book of the Russian Federation or red data books of administrative regions of Russia, activity leading to reduction in number of such species and to deterioration of their habitats can be prohibited or certain restrictions can established to perform such activity."

To meet the requirements of the legislation on protection of rare and threatened plants, animals, and other organisms, the government of the Russian Federation adopted the Decree

No. 158 as of February 19 1996 (with changes as of April 24 2003) On Red Data Book of the Russian Federation. In addition, special regulations were worked out.

Materials on protection of rare and threatened plants and animals, including the List of species of plants and fungi protected at the federal level can be found in the publication *Red Data Book of Russia: Legal Acts* (2000).

According to the decree No. 551 as of June 1 1998 of the government of the Russian Federation On Approval of the Regulations on Selling Standing Timber in Forests of the Russian Federation:

"15. The following species are prohibited to and cannot be cut: sweet chestnut [Castanea sativa], oriental plane [Platanus orientalis], crab apple [Malus sylvestris], pear [Pyrus spp.], cherry [Prunus spp.], apricot [Prunus spp.], cherry-laurel [Prunus laurocerasus], mulberry [Morus spp.], Caucasian elm [Zelkova caprinifolia], box [Buxus sempervirens], yew [Taxus cuspidata and T. baccata], sycamore maple [Acer pseudoplatanus], prickly castor-oil tree [Kalopanax septemlobus], Amur cork tree [Phellodendron amurense], Sakhalin cork tree [Phellodendron sachalinense], walnut [Juglans regia], Manchurian walnut [Juglans mandshurica], Japanese walnut [Juglans sieboldiana], temple juniper [Juniperus rigida], Japanese red pine [Pinus densiflora, including P. densiflora x P. funebris, P. funebris or Pinus densiflora var. funebris], Manchurian fir [Abies holophylla], Sakhalin fir (Kamchatka variety) [Abies sachalinensis var. gracilis], white fir [Abies sachalinensis var. mayriana or A. mayriana], Sakhalin spruce [Picea glehnii], Karelian birch [Betula verrucosa f. careliaca], iron birch [Betula schmidtii], magnolia [Magnolia spp.], Daimyo oak [Quercus dentata], yezo water oak [Quercus crispula or Q. mongolica grosseserrata], Bothrocaryum [Bothrocaryum controversum, or Cornus controversa, or Swida controversa], Korean mountain ash [Sorbus alnifolia or Micromeles alnifolia], Chinese flowering ash [Fraxinus sieboldiana], Olga Bay larch [Larix olgensis or L. gmelinii var. olgensis]. It is also prohibited to cut trees, bushes, and lianas of other valuable and rare species found in the lists approved by the authorities of the administrative regions of the Russian Federation, including those species that are listed in the Red Data Book of the Russian Federation and Red Data Books of its administrative regions.

When clearcutting, including final felling, trees, bushes, and lianas of the aforementioned species should be left standing, together with small groups of trees located nearby.

Felling of trees, bushes, and lianas of the aforementioned species can be only permitted when they are in poor sanitary state and, as an exception, when it is associated with the conversion of forest lands into non-forest ones according to the established procedure for purposes of extraction of mineral resources, building of linear infrastructure, and clearing forest of the forest fund for construction purposes, as well as in other cases when it is based on the decisions made by the authorities of the relevant administrative regions of the Russian Federation agreed with departments in charge of forest management and nature protection."

According to the Federal Forest Service's of Russia order as of December 30 1993 No. 348 *On Approval of Basic Guidelines for Establishment of Special Protection Forest Patches*:

- "4.4. Documents of special protection forest patches [OZU] account of each forest owner should contain detailed data on the forest resource included in these forest patches specified for all types of patches (by land categories, dominant species, and age groups), as well as the summary data on the groups of special protection forest patches that have similar restrictions of forest management:
- special protection forest patches where final felling can be done only using selection cuts;
- special protection forest patches where final felling is prohibited;
- special protection forest patches where all types of forest use are prohibited. ...
- 5.1. Special protection forest patches are established based on economic value of forests, their location, functions, and technical and economical provisions according to the indicators and norms given in Table which can be specified and refined by the administrative regions of the Russian Federation.

No.	Type of special protection forest patch	Indicators and parameters for establishing special protection forest patches
15.	Forest patches with the presence of relic and endemic plants (tree species)	Forest patches, where woody, shrubby and herbaceous flora includes relic and endemic species of plants of scientific or historic significance.  Area and borders of each such territory are established based on a special survey and substantiation (are established if they are not part of any special protective category of forest)
16.	Forest patches in sites of occurrence of rare and threatened species of wild animals and plants	Forest patches in sites of occurrence of rare and threatened species of wild animals and plants.  Area and borders of each such territory are established based on a special survey and substantiation (are established if they are not part of any special protective category of forest)

... ".

In addition, according to the same regulations the following types of stands can be recognized as special protection forest patches, in which harvesting can be restricted or prohibited:

- Edges of forest at the border with non-forest areas;
- Small forest patches located among non-forested areas;
- Patches of forest in ravines and gullies and at adjacent areas and on slopes of primary banks of river valleys;
- Forest patches near the sources of rivers and streams;
- Forest patches protecting coasts;
- Forest patches on erosive and weatherable soils;
- Forest strips in the mountains along their upper border with treeless areas;
- Forest strips along the edge of precipice, taluses and landslides;
- Forest strips along the beds of avalanches and mudflows;
- Forest patches on steep slopes in mountains;
- Protective forests along the ridges and watershed lines;
- Forests in karst areas and protective forest belts around karst areas;
- Forests on rocky placers;
- Protected parts of wildlife reserves (zakazniks);
- Forest patches around capercaillie leks;
- Forest strips along rivers and other water bodies inhabited by beavers;
- Forest patches of special management importance.

These OZU types can be used for protection of critical habitats (key biotopes) of rare, threatened, endangered, vulnerable and care-demanding species of plants, animals and fungi as well as some high conservation value forests (see *Annex E*).

When finding a rare or threatened species habitat during allocation of a harvest area for clearcut, part of the area can be designated a non-exploitable area (NEP), in which no logging shall occur.

According to the *Water Code* No. 74-FZ (Article 65) "*Water protective zones and coastal protective strips*":

- "... 4. The width of the water protective zone of river or stream is established starting from their source to the mouth depending on river length:
  - 1) 50 m for rivers under 10-km long;
  - 2) 100 m for rivers from 10 to 50-km long;
  - 3) 200 m for rivers over 50-km long.

- 5. For rivers and streams with the length less than 10 km from the source to the mouth, a water protective zone coincides with a coastal protective strip. The radius for the water protective zone around the source is equal to 50 m.
- 6. The width of the water protective zone of the lake or reservoir, except lakes inside bogs and lake or reservoir with area less than 0.5 sq. km equals to 50 m.
- 7. The width of the water protective zone of the Lake Baikal is established by the Federal law No. 94-FZ as of May 1 1999 "On Protection of the Lake Baikal".
- 8. The width of the water protective zone of seaside equals to 500 m.
- 9. Water protective zones along main and secondary channels coincide with the land allocated for their construction.
- 11. The width of the coastal protective strip depends on the gradient of the slope near the water body and is equal to 30 m for backwards and zero slopes, 40 m for slopes under 3 degrees and 50 m for slopes over 3 degrees.
- 12. For stagnant and non-stagnant lakes and respective streams located inside wetlands the coastal protective strip equals to 50 m.
- 13. The width of the coastal protective strip of lakes and reservoir having significance for fisheries (spawning grounds, sites of fattening and wintering of fish and other aquatic biological resources) equals to 200 m independently of the slope of adjacent lands."

### **Regional Red Data Books**

According to the Law *On Wildlife* No. 52-FZ (Article 24) (see above), each administrative region of the Russian Federation should develop and publish its own Red Data Book. Regional Red Data Books are published either as joint volumes devoted to animals, plants and fungi, or as separate volumes on particular kingdom.

The majority of regional Red Data Books refer to a particular administrative region of Russia. However, in some cases they could refer to several administrative regions. Thus, the Red Data Book of Arkhangelsk Oblast contains data for Nenets Autonomous Okrug, while those of Leningrad Oblast for the city of St. Petersburg, Chita Oblast for Agin–Buryat Autonomous Okrug and Irkutsk Oblast for Ust-Orda Buryat Autonomous Okrug, respectively. The Red Data Book of the Middle Urals includes data for Sverdlovsk Oblast and Perm Kray, whereas that of the Northern Far East contains data for Kamchatka and Magadan oblasts and Koryak and Chukotka autonomous okrugs.

The majority of regional Red Data Books are arranged similarly to the *Red Data Book of the Russian Federation* (2001). Articles on particular species are organized according to the following scheme: species name and systematic position, status of rareness and vulnerability, extent of occurrence, number, ecology, limiting factors, undertaken and required protection measures, and sources of information. Sometimes maps are provided showing the occurrence of particular species. The majority of regional Red Data Books include both lists of species and annotated articles.

When identifying the rarity and vulnerability of species, the majority of regional Red Data Books refer to IUCN categories. However, in the Red Data Book of the Russian Federation, out-of-date categories are used. The new IUCN classification (Categories, 2002), is not yet used anywhere.

Regional Red Data Books fall into two categories according to their legal status: official (published with observation of relevant regulations and procedures) and scientific (published without observation of the relevant legal documents and, therefore not providing legal protection for the listed species).

Some official regional Red Data Books are published with violation of the legislation. For example, the list of species in the Red Data Book may not match that, which was preliminarily approved by the legislative bodies of the administrative region of the Russian Federation. In some cases, the Rules on the regional Red Data Book were approved by the regional legislative authorities, while the List of Rare and Threatened Species were not.

**Table C1.** Effective Red Data Books of the administrative regions of the Russian Federation (as of November 15 2003) (after Gorbatovskiy, 2003, with corrections)

Region	Year of Publishing	Book Status	Form of publication
	Central Fed		t
Kursk Oblast	2001	scientific	volume on animals
	2001	scientific	volume on plants and fungi
Lipetsk Oblast	1997	scientific	volume on animals
Moscow	2001	official	joint volume
Moscow Oblast	1998	official	joint volume
Ryazan Oblast	2001	official	volume on animals
•	2002	official	volume on fungi and plants
Smolensk Oblast	1997	official	joint volume
Tambov Oblast	2000	official	volume on animals
	2002	official	volume on plants, lichens and fungi
Tver Oblast	2002	official	joint volume
N	orthwestern l	Federal Dist	rict
Arkhangelsk Oblast and Nenets	1995	official	joint volume
Autonomous Okrug			
Komi Republic	1998	official	joint volume
Leningrad Oblast and the city of	2000	official	volume on plants and fungi
St. Petersburg	2002	official	volume on animals
Murmansk Oblast	2003	official	joint volume
Republic of Karelia	1995	official	joint volume
	Southern Fe	deral Distric	et
Krasnodar Kray	1994	official	joint volume
Republic of Adygeya	2000	official	joint volume
Republic of Dagestan	1998	official	joint volume
Republic of Kabardino-Balkaria	2000	official	joint volume
Republic of Karachay-Cherkessia	1998	scientific	joint volume
Republic of North Ossetia-Alania	1999	official	joint volume
Stavropol Kray	2002	official	volume on animals
	2002	official	volume on plants
Volgograd Oblast	1992	scientific	joint volume
	Volga Fede	eral District	
Astrakhan Oblast	2004	official	joint volume
Chuvash Republic	2001	official	volume on plants and fungi
Kirov Oblast	2001	official	joint volume
Orenburg Oblast	1998	official	joint volume
Penza Oblast	2002	official	volume on plants and fungi
Perm Oblast and Komi-Permyak	1996	official	joint volume
Autonomous Okrug*			
Republic of Bashkortostan	1987	scientific	joint volume
	2001 (v. 1)	official	volume on plants
	2002 (v. 2)	official	volume on mosses, alga, lichens and fungi
Republic of Mari El	1997	official	volume on plants
•	2002	official	volume on animals

Region	Year of Publishing	Book Status	Form of publication
Republic of Tatarstan	1995	official	joint volume
Republic of Udmurtia	2001	official	volume on animals
	2001	official	volume on plants, lichens and fungi
Saratov Oblast	1996	official	volume on plants, fungi and lichens
Ural Federal District			
Khanty–Mansi Autonomous Okrug	2003	official	joint volume
Kurgan Oblast	2002	official	joint volume
Sverdlovsk Oblast*	1996	official	joint volume
Yamalo–Nenets Autonomous Okrug	1997	official	joint volume
Siberian Federal District			
Altay Kray	1998	official	volume on animals
	1998	official	volume on plants
Buryat Republic	1988	official	joint volume (animal section)
	2002	official	volume on plants and fungi
Chita Oblast and Agin–Buryat	2000	scientific	volume on animals
Autonomous Okrug	2000	scientific	volume on plants
Irkutsk Oblast and Ust-Orda	2001	official	volume on plants
Buryat Autonomous Okrug	2000	cc: · 1	
Kemerovo Oblast	2000	official	volume on animals
Vmocn oxygnals Vmox	2000	official official	volume on plants
Krasnoyarsk Kray	2000 2005	official	volume on animals
Novosibirsk Oblast	1998	official	volume on plants and fungi volume on plants
Novosiolisk Oblast	2000	official	volume on plants
Republic of Altay	1996	official	volume on animals
Republic of Fitting	1996	official	volume on plants
Republic of Khakassia	2002	official	volume on plants and fungi
Tomsk Oblast	2002	official	joint volume
Tuva Republic	1999	scientific	volume on plants
Tu vu Tepushe	2002	scientific	volume on animals
Far Eastern Federal District			
Amur Oblast	1995	official	volume on plants
Chukotka Autonomous Okrug**	1998	scientific	volume on animals
Jewish Autonomous Oblast	1997	official	volume on plants
Kamchatka Oblast**	1998	scientific	volume on animals
Khabarovsk Kray	2000	official	joint volume
Koryak Autonomous Okrug**	1998	scientific	volume on animals
Magadan Oblast**	1998	scientific	volume on animals
Republic of Sakha (Yakutia)	1987	scientific	volume on animals
	2000	official	volume on plants and fungi
Sakhalin Oblast	2000	official	volume on animals

<sup>\*</sup> See Red Data Book of the Middle Urals (Sverdlovsk and Perm Oblasts): Rare and Threatened Species of Animals and Plants.

<sup>\*\*</sup> See Red Data Book of the Northern Far East.

**Table C2.** Degree of readiness of unpublished Red Data Books of the administrative regions of the Russian Federation (as of November 15 2003) (after Gorbatovskiy, 2003, with modifications)

Oblast	Year of Red Data Book establishing	Expected year of publishing	Form of publication	
Central Federal District				
Belgorod Oblast	2002	2004	volume on animals	
Beigorou Golust	2002	2004	volume on plants	
Kaluga Oblast	1998	2004	joint volume	
Orel Oblast	1996	2004	joint volume	
Yaroslavl Oblast	2000	2003	joint volume	
	Northwestern Feder	al District		
Vologoda Oblast	in the stage of agreement	2004	volume on plants	
	and approval	2005	volume on animals	
	Southern Federal	District		
Chechen Republic	2003	2004-2005	joint volume	
Republic of Ingushetia	2003	2004	joint volume	
Republic of Kalmykia	1998	2005-2006	no data	
	Volga Federal D	istrict		
Nizhny Novgorod Oblast	1997	2003	joint volume	
Republic of Mordovia	2003	2003	volume on animals	
		2003	volume on plants	
Samara Oblast	in the process of	2004	joint volume	
	agreement and approval			
Ulyanovsk Oblast	2002	2003	joint volume	
Ural Federal District				
Chelyabinsk Oblast	1999	2003	joint volume	
Tyumen Oblast	2002	2004	joint volume	
	Far Eastern Federal District			
Primorskiy Kray	1999	2003	volume on animals	
		2004	volume on plants	

Red Data Books with scientific status can acquire a legal status after observing the relevant procedure, e.g. after official approval of the Rules on the Red Data Book and the List of species nominated to the Red Data Book.

The officially approved List of species in the regional Red Data Book may differ from the officially approved List of candidate species. In this case, it is recommended to use the data of Red Data Book itself as it is approved by the decision of the regional administration.

# Identification and Protection of Habitats of Rare, Threatened and Endangered Species of Plants, Animals and Fungi

Enterprise that seeks FSC certification should approach specialists on rare, threatened and endangered species and commission them to do the following:

• to compile the lists of rare, threatened and endangered species for the area as well as a list of likely critical habitats (key biotopes) of rare, threatened, endangered, vulnerable to disturbance and care-demanding species that can be threatened by forestry-related activities. Such list shall be compiled based on the Red-data Book of the Russian Federation and relevant regional red-data books;

- to review available materials on rare, threatened and endangered species occurring in the area;
- to develop a set of recommendations for identification of such species habitats and their
  protection measures (some protection measures could be found in the red-data books). The Reddata Book of the Russian Federation and relevant regional red-data books may be used to justify
  the necessity of protection of the key biotopes, while the latter can be identified using more
  common and noticeable indicator species;
- to conduct when necessary additional surveys for identification of habitats with concentrated occurrence of rare, threatened and endangered species of plants and habitats critical for rare, threatened and endangered species of wildlife.

After that the forest managers should approach forest surveyors in order:

- to whatever extent possible to take into account available materials on rare, threatened and endangered species in the lesokhozyaystvenny reglament for a particular district level forest management administration unit (leskhoz) and forest management plan for a lease area;
- to establish water protective zones alongside all water bodies with a width consistent to the Water Code requirements;
- to establish OZU, including those in habitats critical for rare, threatened and endangered species, coast protective forest patches, forest patches near the sources of rivers and streams and forest patches with the presence of relic and endemic plants; and
- to include protection measures for habitats of rare, threatened and endangered species, including criteria for identification of their likely critical habitats, in the forest management plan.

The approval by the state ecological expertise (state environmental impact assessment) of the forest management plan containing a special section on protection of rare, threatened and endangered species can facilitate justification of the need for implemented management activities for protection and enforcement governmental agencies in the sphere of forest management.

Generally it not possible to survey all habitats of rare, threatened and endangered species in field. Nonetheless, it is necessary to ensure that at least the largest populations or critical habitats (key biotopes) with the greatest concentration of plants, fungi and invertebrates as well as of habitats critical for lifecycles of vertebrates (e.g. nesting grounds, borrows, refugia, sites for concentration or permanent migration routes and foraging and feeding grounds are identified. Examples of *key biotopes* for large vertebrates are natural outcrops of salt-bearing rocks, rock outcrops, swamps and sparse forests, burnt and snag areas, areas rich with berries, bear lairs, places with high winter concentration of hoofed animals, and nesting grounds of large birds etc. Destruction of the critical habitats (e.g. natural outcrops of salt-bearing rocks or spawning ground of fish) may lead to a drastic reduction in number of even common wildlife species (including game and fisheries species). The management regime in the key biotopes should completely exclude or seriously restrict timber harvesting and prohibit road construction and location of temporary loggers' camps, store areas and other objects.

For preservation of a significant part of forest biodiversity during harvesting, it is sufficient to protect the key biotopes of rare, threatened, endangered species, vulnerable to disturbance and care-demanding species. The direct identification of such species and their habitats during field surveys is a laborious and long process. It can be accelerated or made easier by protecting habitats with the high probability of non-accidental occurrence of the species above. Such places are much easier to identify (even for non-specialists) using indirect characteristics such as the presence of indicator species or certain biotope characteristics. The following examples of the critical habitats (key biotopes) for plants and fungi (as well as for many species of wildlife) can be mentioned:

- wetlands (including bog, fens and swamps) and wet areas, including those with the timber growing stock less 50 cubic meter per hectare;
- stands on steep slopes greater than 20 degrees;
- stands on rock outcrops and rocky places, especially with calcareous soils;
- stands with the presence of rare and endemic plant species, e.g. stands with a high admixture (in the southern taiga zone of European Russia) of noble broadleaf species and/or noticeable

presence of nemoral flora in the lower stand layers (in the north of the taiga zone) or stands with occurrence of Siberian larch and Siberian pine in European Russia;

- old-growth black alder stands;
- reference (late seral stages) patches of unevenaged coniferous forests (with the presence of very old trees, large-size snags, gaps and windthrown patches, spruce stands with tall forbs and fire refugia) (i.e., old-growth, intact or pristine forests).

Once such a stand has been identified, no harvesting should occur there or it should be restricted in accordance with the guidelines on preservation of the respective biotopes developed by knowledgeable organizations.

### **Identification and Protection of Key Stand Elements during Harvesting**

Deadwood at different decomposition stages with tree regeneration groups and snags (high stumps) are the key substratum for a groups of rare and vulnerable to disturbance habitat specialists (plants, fungi, lichens and insects) as well as for some bird specialists. Old-growth cavity trees are used as nests by large birds, bats and mammals. Retention of clumps of old deciduous trees (aspens and birches) provides more effective natural regeneration of conifers. Retention of individual trees (e.g. noble broadleaf trees (oak, ash, elm, maple, linden and alike), Siberian pine and Siberian larch in European Russia) enables more effective biodiversity conservation not only of woody species, but also plants, fungi and animals dependant on them. Clearcutting of all trees in swamps and wet forests leads to continuous paludification of harvest areas and delays regeneration.

In order to ensure conservation of rare, threatened, endangered, vulnerable and care-demanding species during clearcut (especially for harvest areas greater than 5 ha or wider than 100 m or at the border, at least by one of its sides, with non-forested area), retention of wind resistant and not creating safety hazard at forestry operations key stand elements (trees and their groups with up to 10–20% of the growing stock at the harvest area) is required. Residual trees could be seed trees of target species; some old non-target broadleaf trees; trees with large bird nests, large cavity trees; veteran trees whose age noticeably exceeds the average age of the main canopy; tree species rare in this area (it is better to leave them together with groups or clumps of other trees); and large wind resistant dying trees and snags located at the distance from roads, landings etc. as well as such trees left within clumps and groups and deadwood as high stumps.

At areas with a high groundwater table and areas next to wetlands, it is recommended to leave residual wind resistant trees with the overall growing stock up to 10–20% of that at the area before the harvesting in order to ensure partial preservation of stand transpiration.

The legality for retention of the key stand elements can be justified by the presence of rare, threatened and endangered species of flora and fauna (even though these species could be not so rare and threatened in the particular area but rather serve as indicators of the high value of the biotope).

Some ecologically valuable trees can be left inside the groups and clumps of seed trees and on other non-exploitable areas (NEP), which are identified and excluded from forestry operations when allocating harvest areas.

# Preservation and Maintenance of Ecological Functions and Values during Harvesting

FSC Criterion 6.3 says that: "Ecological functions and values shall be maintained intact, enhanced, or restored, including:

- a) Forest regeneration and succession,
- b) Genetic species, and ecosystem diversity,
- c) Natural cycles that affect the productivity of the forest ecosystem."

In terms of implication on planning and forestry operations, this means that harvesting should be done considering natural landscape borders and mimicking the natural dynamics (e.g. fire or non-fire) wherever it is possible. Imitation of the natural stand dynamics at harvesting operations

makes the part of ecologically adaptive forest management. According to this system, the choice of harvesting techniques should to the maximum extent mimic peculiarities of the natural dynamics of a particular forest type and consider its composition and structure. For example, when harvesting in evenaged dark (spruce and fir) coniferous, mixed coniferous-broadleaf and broadleaf forests, which develop in the absence of fires (or other stand replacing disturbances), the preference should be given to selection cuts. In dark coniferous stands with expressed tree generations, some narrow clear-strip cuts and small-size clearcuts can be used. (Note that broadleaf trees here mean noble broadleaf species like oak, ash, maple, elm and linden). Within the framework of this approach it is not recommended to imitate natural catastrophic events, such as catastrophic fires which cause dying of most of trees. Therefore, the rationale for the use of clearcuts should be provided and harvesting should include biodiversity conservation measures. Thus, in coniferous and mixed coniferous-broadleaf stands with fire dynamics, seed trees in numbers sufficient to provide natural regeneration, small-size trees, key stand elements and key biotopes (e.g. small bogs, forest strips along the streams etc., see above) should be left untouched.

Since the switch to ecologically adaptive forest management requires some time to accumulate the necessary knowledge and experience, the applicant should develop a special program for introducing such harvesting techniques. Nonetheless, the forest manager should immediately undertake measures to reduce adverse impact of the use of large-size clearcuts (30–50 ha) with retention of only non-vital small-size trees, which leads to a significant delay of coniferous regeneration. The set of such measures includes:

- identification and preservation of critical habitats (key biotopes) sites of high conservation value (see further *Annex C*, the section on *Identification and Protection of Habitats of Rare, Threatened and Endangered Species of Plants, Animals and Fungi)*;
- tree retention to preserve the diversity of the forest ecosystem and the mosaic of habitats (see further *Annex C*, the section on *Preservation and Maintenance of Ecological Functions and Values during Harvesting*);
- the use of techniques aimed at natural forest regeneration; and
- the use of machinery and practices that minimize the impact on soil and young growth and pollution of forest, soil and water resources.

#### **References on Red Data Books**

#### Russian Federation

- 1. 2003 \*Russia\* Red List of Protected Rare and Threatened Animals and Plants. Vol. 1. Vertebrates [2003 \*Rossiya\* Krasny spisok osobo okhranyaemykh redkikh i nakhodyashchikhsya pod ugrozoi ischeznoveniya zhivotnykh i rasteniy. Chast 1. Pozvonochnye]. Ed. V.E. Prisyazhnyuk, VNIIPrirody. Moscow, 2004. 304 p. (In Russ.)
- 2. 2003 \*Russia\* Red List of Protected Rare and Threatened Animals and Plants. Vol. 2. Spore plants and fungi [2003 \*Rossiya\* Krasny spisok osobo okhranyaemykh redkikh i nakhodyashchikhsya pod ugrozoi ischeznoveniya zhivotnykh i rasteniy. Chast 2. Sporovye rasteniya i griby]. Ed. V.E. Prisyazhnyuk. Moscow: VNIIPrirody, 2004. 384 p. (In Russ.)
- 3. Baillie J.E.M., Hilton–Taylor P. and Stuart S.N. (eds.). 2004 IUCN Red List of Threatened Species. A Global Species Assessment. IUCN, Gland and Cambridge, 2004. 217 p.
- 4. Gorbatovskiy V.V. Red Data Books of Administrative Regions of the Russian Federation: A Guidebook [Krasnye knigi subyektov Rossiyskoy Federatsii: Spravochnoe posobie]. Moscow: NIA-Priroda, 2003. 496 p. (In Russ.)
- 5. Decree of the Government of the Russian Federation of February 19 1996 No. 158 On Red Data Book of the Russian Federation (with changes as of April 24 2003) [Postanovlenie Pravitelstva Rissiyskoy Federatsii ot 19.02.1996 No. 158 O Krasnoy knige Rossiyskoy Federatsii (s izmeneiyami ot 24.04.2003)]. (In Russ.)

- 6. Kotiranta H., Uotila P. Sulkava S. and Peltonen S.–L. (eds.). Red Data Book of East Fennoscandia. Helsinki: Ministry of the Environment, Finnish Environment Institute and Botanical Museum, Finnish Museum of Natural History, 1998. 351 p.
- 7. List of Objects of Flora Excluded from Red Data Book of the Russian Federation [Perechen obyektov rastitelnogo mira, zanesennykh v Krasnuyu knigu Rossiyskoy Federatsii] (Manuscript, 2004). Approved January 19 2004 at the extended bureau of Commission on Rare and Threatened Species of Animals, Plants and Fungi under Ministry of Natural Resources of the Russian Federation. (In Russ.)
- 8. List of Objects of Flora Included in Red Data Book of the Russian Federation (Manuscript, 2004) [Perechen obyektov rastitelnogo mira, zanesennykh v Krasnuyu knigu Rossiyskoy Federatsii]. Approved January 19 2004 at the extended bureau of Commission on Rare and Threatened Species of Animals, Plants and Fungi under the Ministry of Natural Resources of the Russian Federation. (In Russ.)
- 9. Red Data Book of RSFSR (Plants) [Krasnaya kniga RSFSR (Rasteniya)]. Moscow: Rosagropromizdat, 1988. 590 p. (In Russ.)
- 10. Red Data Book of Russia: Legal Acts [Krasnaya kniga Rossii: pravovye akty]. Moscow: Gos. kom. Ross. Federatsii po okhrane okruzh. sredy, 2000. 143 p. (In Russ.)
- 11. Red Data Book of the Russian Federation (Animals) [Krasnaya kniga Rossiyskoy Federatsii (Zhivotnye)]. Moscow: Minist. prirodn. resursov Ross. Federatsii i Ross. Akad. Nauk, 2001. 864 p. (In Russ.)

#### Central Federal District

- 12. Red Data Book of Belgorod Oblast [*Krasnaya kniga Belgorodskoy oblasti*]. Belgorod: Ekolog. fond Belgorodsk. oblasti, 2005 (in press). (In Russ.)
- 13. Red Data Book of Kursk Oblast. Vol. 1. Rare and Threatened Species of Animals [Krasnaya kniga Kurskoy oblasti. T. 1. Redkie i ischeznayushchie vidy zhivotnykh]. Ed. A.A. Vlasov. Tula: Grif i Ko, 2001. 120 p. (In Russ.)
- 14. Red Data Book of Kursk Oblast. Vol. 2. Rare and Threatened Species of Plants and Fungi [Krasnaya kniga Kurskoy oblasti. T. 2. Redkie i ischeznayushchie vidy rasteniy i gribov]. Ed. N.I. Zolotukhin. Tula: Grif i Ko, 2001. 165 p. (In Russ.)
- 15. Red Data Book of Lipetsk Oblast: Rare and Threatened Species of Animals [Krasnaya kniga Lipetskoy oblasti. Redkie i nakhodyashchiesya pod ugrozoy ischeznoveniya vidy zhivotnykh]. Eds. R.M. Klimov, V.T. Kuznetsova and V.R. Sarychev. Lipetsk: Lipetsk. pedag. inst., 1997. 271 p. (In Russ.)
- 16. Red Data Book of Moscow Oblast [Krasnaya kniga Moskovskoy oblasti]. Eds. V.A. Zubakin and V. P. Tikhomirov. Moscow: Argus, Russkiy Univ., 1998. 560 p. (In Russ.)
- 17. Red Data Book of Ryazan Oblast: Rare and Threatened Species of Animals [Krasnaya kniga Ryazanskoy oblasti. Redkie i nakhodyashchiesya pod ugrozoy ischeznoveniya vidy zhivotnykh]. Eds V.P. Ivanova. Ryazan: Uzorchye, 2001. 312 p. (In Russ.)
- 18. Red Data Book of Ryazan Oblast: Rare and Threatened Species of Fungi and Plants [Krasnaya kniga Ryazanskoy oblasti. Redkie i nakhodyashchiesya pod ugrozoy ischeznoveniya vidy gribov i rasteniy]. Ed. M.V. Kazakova. Ryazan: Uzorchye, 2002. 264 p. (In Russ.)
- 19. Red Data Book of Smolensk Oblast: Rare and Threatened Species of Animals and Plants [Krasnaya kniga Smolenskoy oblasti. Redkie i nakhodyashchiesya pod ugrozoy ischeznoveniya vidy zhivotnykh i rasteniy]. Ed. N.D. Kruglov. Smolensk: Smolensk. pedagog. inst., 1997. 294 p. (In Russ.)
- 20. Red Data Book of Tambov Oblast: Animals [*Krasnaya kniga Tambovskoy oblasti: zhivotnye*]. Eds. G.A. Lada and V.N. Yatsenko. Tambov: Tambovpoligrafizdat, 2000. 352 p. (In Russ.)
- 21. Red Data Book of Tambov Oblast: Plants, Lichens and Fungi [*Krasnaya kniga Tambovskoy oblasti; rasteniya, lishainiki, griby*]. Ed. A.G. Elenevskiy. Tambov: Tambovpoligrafizdat, 2002. 348 p. (In Russ.)

- 22. Red Data Book of the City of Moscow [Krasnaya kniga goroda Moskvy]. Eds. B.L. Samoylov and G.V. Morozov. Moscow: ABF, 2001. 624 p. (In Russ.)
- 23. Red Data Book of Tver Oblast [Krasnaya kniga Tverskoy oblasti]. Ed. A.R. Sorokin. Tver: Veche Tveri, ANTEK, 2002. 256 p. (In Russ.)

#### Northwestern Federal District

- 24. Red Data Book of Arkhangelsk Oblast: Rare and Protected species of Plants and Animals. [Krasnaya kniga Arkhangelskoy oblasti. Redkie i okhranayemye vidy rasteniy i zhivotnykh]. Ed. V.A. Andreev, Arkhangelsk: Pravda Severa, 1995. 330 p. (In Russ.)
- 25. Red Data Book of Karelia [*Krasnaya kniga Karelii*]. Ed. E.V. Ivanter and O.L. Kuznetsov. Petrozavodsk: Karelia, 1995. 288 p. (In Russ.)
- 26. Red Data Book of Murmansk Oblast [Krasnaya kniga Murmanskoy Oblasti]. Eds. N.A. Konstantinov, A.R. Koryakin and O.A. Makarova. Murmansk: Murmansk. obl. kn. izd., 2003. 395 p. (In Russ.)
- 27. Red Data Book of Nature of Leningrad Oblast. Vol. 2. Plants and Fungi [Krasnaya kniga prirody Leningradskoy oblasti. T. 2. Rasteniya i griby]. Ed. N.N. Tsvelev. St. Petersburg: Mir i semya, 2000. 672 p. (In Russ.)
- 28. Red Data Book of Nature of Leningrad Oblast. Vol. 3. Animals [Krasnaya kniga prirody Leningradskoy oblasti. T. 3. Zhivotnye]. Ed. G.A. Noskov. St. Petersburg: Mir i semya, 2002. 480 p. (In Russ.)
- 29. Red Data Book of the Komi Republic: Rare and Endangered Species of Plants and Animals [Krasnaya kniga Respubliki Komi. Redkie i nakhodyashchiesya pod ugrozoy ischeznoveniya vidy rasteniy i zhivotnykh]. Ed. A.I. Taskaev. Syktyvkar: DIK, 1998. 528 p. (In Russ.)

#### Southern Federal District

- 30. Red Data Book of Karachay-Cherkessia: Rare and Threatened Species of Fauna and Flora [Krasnaya kniga Karachayevo-Cherkessii. Redkie i ischezayushchie vidy fauny i flory]. Ed. D.R. Salpagorov. Stavropol: Stavropolsk. kn. izd., 1988. 158 p. (In Russ.)
- 31. Red Data Book of Krasnodar Kray: Rare and Threatened Species of Plants and Animals [Krasnaya kniga Krasnodarskogo kraya. Redkie i nakhodyashchiesya pod ugrozoy ischeznoveniya vidy rasteniy i zhivotnykh]. Ed. V.Ya. Nagalevskiy. Krasnosdar: Krasnodarsk. kn. izd., 1994. 288 p. (In Russ.)
- 32. Red Data Book of Stavropol Kray: Rare and Threatened Species of Plants and Animals. Vol. 1. Plants [Krasnaya kniga Stavropolskogo kraya. Redkie i nakhodyashchiesya pod ugrozoy ischeznoveniya vidy rasteniy i zhivotnykh. T. 1. Rasteniya]. Ed. A.L. Chernogorov. Stavropol: Poligrafservice, 2002. 384 p. (In Russ.)
- 33. Red Data Book of Stavropol Kray: Rare and Threatened Species of Plants and Animals. Vol. 2. Animals [*Krasnaya kniga Stavropolskogo kraya. Redkie i nakhodyashchiesya pod ugrozoy ischeznoveniya vidy rasteniy i zhivotnykh. T. 2 Zhivotnye*]. Ed. A.L. Chernogorov. Stavropol: Poligrafservice, 2002. 216 p. (In Russ.)
- 34. Red Data Book of the Republic of Adygeya: Rare and Threatened Objects of Flora and Fauna [Krasnaya kniga Respubliki Adygei. Redkie i nakhodyashchiesya pod ugrozoy ischeznoveniya obyekty zhivotnogo i rastitelnego mira]. Maykop: Adygeya, 2000. 418 p. (In Russ.)
- 35. Red Data Book of the Republic of Dagestan: Rare and Threatened Species of Animals and Plants [Krasnaya kniga Respubliki Dagestan. Redkie, nakhodyashchiesya pod ugrozoy ischeznoveniya vidy zhivotnykh i rasteniy]. Ed. G.M. Abdurakhmanov. Makhachkala: Dagestansk. kn. izd., 1998. 338 p. (In Russ.)
- 36. Red Data Book of the Republic of Kabardino–Balkaria: Rare and Threatened Species of Animals and Plants [Krasnaya kniga Kabardino-Balkarskoy respubliki. Redkie,

- nakhodyashchiesya pod ugrozoy ischeznoveniya vidy zhivotnykh i rasteniy]. Ed. I.V. Ivanov. Nalchik: El-Fa, 2000. 308 p. (In Russ.)
- 37. Red Data Book of the Republic of Northern Ossetia–Alania: Rare and Threatened Species of Plants and Animals [Krasnaya kniga Respubliki Severnaya Osetiya-Alaniya. Redkie i nakhodyashchiesya pod ugrozoy ischeznoveniya vidy rasteniy i zhivotnykh]. Eds. A.L. Komzha, A.D. Lipkovich, and K.P. Popov. Vladikavkaz: Proyekt-Press, 1999. 248 p. (In Russ.)
- 38. Red Data Book: Rare and Protected Plants and Animals of Volgograd Oblast [*Krasnaya kniga: redkie i okhranayemye vidy rasteniy i zhivotnykh Volgogradskoy oblasti*]. Ed. V.A. Brylev. Volgograd: Izd. otdel Volgogradinformpechati, 1992. 144 p. (In Russ.)

# Volga Federal District

- 39. Red Data Book of Astrakhan Oblast [Krasnaya kniga Astrakhanskoy oblasti]. Ed. Yu.S. Chuykov. Astrakhan: Izd. Nizhnevolzhskogo tsentra ekologicheskogo obrazovaniya, 2004. (In Russ.)
- 40. Red Data Book of Bashkir ASSR: Rare Plants and Animals. Problems of Their Conservation [Krasnaya kniga Bashkirskoy ASSR. Redkie rasteniya i zhivotnye. Problemy ikh okhrany]. Ufa: Bashkirsk. kn. izd., 1987. 212 p. (In Russ.)
- 41. Red Data Book of Kirov Oblast: Animals, Plants and Fungi [Krasnaya kniga Kirovskoy oblasti. Zhivotnye, rasteniya, griby]. Eds. L.N. Dobrinskiy and N.R. Korytin. Yekaterinburg: Izd. Uralsk. Univ., 2001. 288 p. (In Russ.)
- 42. Red Data Book of Orenburg Oblast: Animals and Plants [*Krasnaya kniga Orenburgskoy oblasti. Zhivotnye i rasteniya*]. Ed. A.R. Vasilyeva. Orenburg: Orenburgsk. kn. izd., 1998. 176 p.
- 43. Red Data Book of Penza Oblast. Vol. 1. Plants and Fungi [*Krasnaya kniga Penzenskoy oblasti. T. 1. Rasteniya i griby*]. Ed. A.I. Ivanov. Penza: Penzen. pravda, 2002. 160 p. (In Russ.)
- 44. Red Data Book of Saratov Oblast: Plants, Fungi and Lichens [Krasnaya kniga Saratovskoy oblasti. Rasteniya, griby, lishainiki]. Eds. V.G. Michurin and G.V. Shlyakhtin. Saratov: Detskaya kniga, 1996. 264 p. (In Russ.)
- 45. Red Data Book of the Chuvash Republic. Vol. 1. Rare and Threatened Plants and Fungi [Krasnaya kniga Respubliki Chuvashia. T. 1. Redkie i ischezayushchie rasteniya i griby]. Ed. L.N. Ivanov. Cheboksary: Chuvashia, 2001. 276 p. (In Russ.)
- 46. Red Data Book of the Middle Urals (Sverdlovsk and Perm oblasts): Rare and Threatened Species of Animals and Plants [Krasnaya kniga Srednego Urala (Sverdlovskaya i Permskaya oblasti): Redkie i ischezayushchie vidy zhivotnykh i rasteniy]. Eds. V.N. Bolshakov and P.L. Gorchakovskiy. Yekaterinburg: Izd. Uralsk. Univ., 1996. 280 p. (In Russ.)
- 47. Red Data Book of the Republic of Bashkortostan. Vol. 1. Rare and Threatened Species of Higher Vascular Plants [Krasnaya kniga Respubliki Bashkortostan. T. 1. Redkie i ischezayushchie vidy vysshikh sosudistykh rasteniy]. Ed. E.V. Kucherov. Ufa: Kitap, 2001. 280 p. (In Russ.)
- 48. Red Data Book of the Republic of Bashkortostan. Vol. 2. Bryophyta, Alga, Lichens and Fungi [Krasnaya kniga Respubliki Bashkortostan. T. 2. Mokhoobraznye, vodorosli, lishainiki i griby]. Ed. A.I. Solomesh. Ufa: Tabigat, 2002. 104 p. (In Russ.)
- 49. Red Data Book of the Republic of Mari El: Rare and Protection Demanding Plants of the Mari Flora [Krasnaya kniga Respubliki Mari El: redkie i trebuyushchie okhrany rasteniya Mariyskoy flory]. Ed. V.N. Tikhomirov. Yoshkar-Ola: Mariysk. kn. izd., 1997. 128 p. (In Russ.)
- 50. Red Data Book of the Republic of Mari El: Rare and Threatened Species of Animals [Krasnaya kniga Respubliki Mari El: redkie i ischezayushchie vidy zivotnykh]. Ed. Kh.F. Baldaev. Yoshkar-Ola: Izd. Mariysk. poligrafkombinata, 2002. 164 p. (In Russ.)
- 51. Red Data Book of the Republic of Tatarstan: Animals, Plants and Fungi [Krasnaya kniga Respubliki Tatarstan. Zhivotnye, rasteniya, griby]. Ed. A.I. Shchepovskikh. Kazan: Priroda, 1995. 454 p. (In Russ.)

- 52. Red Data Book of the Republic of Udmurtia: Animals [*Krasnaya kniga Respubliki Udmurtia. Zhivotnye*]. Ed. N.E. Zubtsovskiy. Izhevsk: Udmurtia, 2001. 152 p. (In Russ.)
- 53. Red Data Book of the Republic of Udmurtia: Vascular Plants, Lichens and Fungi [Krasnaya kniga Respubliki Udmurtia. Sosudistye rasteniaya, lishainiki i griby] Ed. V.V. Tuganaev. Izhevsk: Udmurtsk. Univ., 2001. 290 p. (In Russ.)

#### Ural Federal District

- 54. Red Data Book of Khanty–Mansi Autonomous Okrug: Animals, Plants and Fungi [*Krasnaya kniga Khanty-Maniyskogo avtonomnogo okruga: Zhivotnye, rasteniya, griby*]. Ed. A.M. Vasin. Yekaterinburg: Pakrus, 2003. 376 p. (In Russ.)
- 55. Red Data Book of Kurgan Oblast [*Krasnaya kniga Kurganskoy oblasti*]. Eds. V.P. Starikov and N.I. Naumenko. Kurgan: Zauralye, 2002. 424 p. (In Russ.)
- 56. Red Data Book of the Middle Urals (Sverdlovsk and Perm oblasts): Rare and Threatened Species of Animals and Plants [Krasnaya kniga Srednego Urala (Sverdlovskaya i Permskaya oblasti): Redkie i ischezayushchie vidy zhivotnykh i rasteniy]. Eds. V.N. Bolshakov and P.L. Gorchakovskiy. Yekaterinburg: Izd. Uralsk. Univ., 1996. 280 p. (In Russ.)
- 57. Red Data Book of Yamalo–Nenets Autonomous Okrug: Animals, Plants and Fungi [Krasnaya kniga Yamalo-Nenetskogo avtonomnogo okruga: Zhivotnye, rasteniya i griby]. Ed. L.N. Dobrinskiy. Yekaterinburg: Izd. Uralsk. Univ., 1997. 240 p. (In Russ.)

#### Siberian Federal District

- 58. Red Data Book of Altay Kray: Rare and Threatened Species of Animals [Krasnaya kniga Altayskogo kraya. Redkie i nakhodyashchiesya pod ugrozoy ischeznoveniya vidy zhivotnykh]. Ed. N.L. Irisov. Barnaul: Izd. Altaysk. Gos. Univ., 1998. 238 p. (In Russ.)
- 59. Red Data Book of Altay Kray: Rare and Threatened Species of Plants [Krasnaya kniga Altayskogo kraya. Redkie i nakhodyashchiesya pod ugrozoy ischeznoveniya vidy rasteniy]. Ed. R.V. Kamelin. Barnaul: Izd. Altaysk. Gos, Univ., 1998. 306 p. (In Russ.)
- 60. Red Data Book of Chita Oblast and Agin–Buryat Autonomous Okrug (Animals) [Krasnaya kniga Chitinskoy oblasti i Aginskogo Buryatskogo avtonomnogo okruga (zhivotnye)]. Eds. A.M. Vozmilov et al. Chita: Poisk, 2000. 216 p. (In Russ.)
- 61. Red Data Book of Chita Oblast and Agin–Buryat Autonomous Okrug (Plants) [Krasnaya kniga Chitinskoy oblasti i Aginskogo Buryatskogo avtonomnogo okruga (rasteniya)]. Eds. A.P. Ostrovskiy et al. Chita: Stil, 2000. 280 p. (In Russ.)
- 62. Red Data Book of Irkutsk Oblast. Vascular Plants [*Krasnaya kniga Irkutskoy oblasti. Sosudistye rasteniya*]. Ed. A.M. Zarubina. Irkutsk: Oblmashininform, 2001. 200 p. (In Russ.)
- 63. Red Data Book of Kemerovo Oblast: Rare and Threatened Animal Species [Krasnaya kniga Kemerovskoy oblasti. Redkie i nakhodyashchiesya pod ugrozoy ischeznoveniya vidy zhivotnykh]. Eds. T.N. Gagina and N.V. Skalon. Kemerovo: Kemerovsk. kn. izd, 2000. 280 p. (In Russ.)
- 64. Red Data Book of Kemerovo Oblast: Rare and Threatened Species of Plants and Fungi [Krasnaya kniga Kemerovskoy oblasti. Redkie i nakhodyashchiesya pod ugrozoy ischeznoveniya vidy rasteniy i gribov]. Ed. I.M. Krasnoborov. Kemerovo: Kemerovsk. kn. izd., 2000. 248 p.
- 65. Red Data Book of Krasnoyarsk Kray: Rare and Threatened Species of Animals [*Krasnaya kniga Krasnoyarskogo kraya. Redkie i nakhodyashchiesya pod ugrozoy ischeznoveniya vidy zhivotnykh*]. Eds. E.E. Syroechkovskiy, A.P. Savchenko, G.A. Baranov and V.I. Emelyanov. Krasnoyarsk: Izd. Inst. Fiziki Sib. Otdel. Rossiysk. Akad. Nauk, 2000. 248 p. (In Russ.)
- 66. Red Data Book of Krasnoyarsk Kray: Plants and Fungi [*Krasnaya kniga Krasnoyarskogo kraya: Rasteniya i griby*]. Krasnoyarsk: Polikom, 2005. 368 p. (In Russ.)
- 67. Red Data Book of Novosibirsk Oblast: Mammals, Birds, Amphibians, Fishes, Worms and Insects [Krasnaya kniga Novosobirskoy oblasti. Mlekopitayushchie, ptitsy, zemnovodnye, ryby,

- *chervi, nasekomye*]. Ed. M.G. Sergeev. Novosibirsk: Goskomekologiya NSO, 2000. 316 p. (In Russ.)
- 68. Red Data Book of Novosibirsk Oblast: Plants [Krasnaya kniga Novosobirskoy oblasti: Rasteniya]. Eds. I.M. Krasnoborov, D.N. Shaulo, M.N. Lomonosov et al. Novosibirsk: Nauka, 1998. 144 p. (In Russ.)
- 69. Red Data Book of Rare and Threatened Animals and Plants of Buryat ASSR [Krasnaya kniga redkikh i nakhodyashchikhsya pod ugrozoy ischeznoveniya vidov zhivotnykh i rasteniy Buryatskoy ASSR]. Ed. N.M. Pronin. Ulan-Ude: Byryatsk. kn. izd., 1988. 416 p. (In Russ.)
- 70. Red Data Book of the Altay Republic: Rare and Threatened Species of Plants [Krasnaya kniga Respubliki Altay. Redkie i nakhodyashchiesya pod ugrozoy ischeznoveniya vidy rasteniy]. Eds. A.G. Maneev, I.N. Pshenichnaya, N.V. Fedotkin et al. Novosibirsk: Diamant Co. LTD., 1996. 131 p. (In Russ.)
- 71. Red Data Book of the Buryat Republic: Rare and Threatened Species of Plants and Fungi [Krasnaya kniga Respubliki Buryatii. Redkie i ischezayushchiesya vidy rasteniy i gribov]. Ed. T.G. Boykov. Novosibirsk: Nauka, 2002. 340 p. (In Russ.)
- 72. Red Data Book of the Altay Republic: Animals [*Krasnaya kniga Respubliki Altay. Zhivotnye*]. Ed. N.P. Malkov. Novosibirsk: Diamant Co LTD., 1996. 259 p. (In Russ.)
- 73. Red Data Book of the Republic of Khakassia: Plants and Fungi [Krasnaya kniga Respubliki Khakasia. Rasteniya i griby]. Ed. I.M. Krasnoborov. Novosibirsk: Nauka, 2002. 263 p. (In Russ.)
- 74. Red Data Book of the Tuva Republic: Animals [Krasnaya kniga Respubliki Tyva. Zhivotnye]. Eds N.I. Putintsev, L.K. Arakchaa, V.I. Zabelin, and V.V.Zaika. Novosibirsk: Izd. Sib. Otdel. Rossiysk. Akad. Nauk, 2002. 168 p. (In Russ.)
- 75. Red Data Book of the Tuva Republic: Plants [*Krasnaya kniga Respubliki Tyva. Rasteniya*]. Ed. I.M. Krasnoborov. Novosibirsk: Izd. Sib. Otdel. Rossiysk. Akad. Nauk, 1999. 150 p. (In Russ.)
- 76. Red Data Book of Tomsk Oblast [*Krasnaya kniga Tomskoy oblasti*]. Ed. A.R. Revushkin. Tomsk: Izd. Tomsk. Univ., 2002. 402 p. (In Russ.)

#### Far Eastern Federal District

- 77. Rare and Threatened Plants of Amur Oblast [Redkie i ischezayushchiesya rasteniya Amurskoy oblasti]. Eds. V.M. Kharchenko, G.F. Darman, and I.I. Shapoval. Blagoveshchensk: Amursk. Botan. sad, 1995. 460 p. (In Russ.)
- 78. Red Data Book of Jewish Autonomous Oblast. Part 1. Rare and Threatened Species of Vascular Plants [*Krasnaya kniga Evreyskoy avtonomnoy oblasti. Chast 1. Redkie i nakhodyashchiesya pod ugrozoy ischeznoveniya vidy sosusdistykh rasteniy*]. Eds. G.A. Belaya and V.L. Morozov. Vladivostok: Dalnauka, 1997. 388 p. (In Russ.)
- 79. Red Data Book of Khabarovsk Kray: Rare and Threatened Species of Plants and Animals [Krasnaya kniga Khabarovskogo kraya. Redkie i nakhodyashchiesya pod ugrozoy ischeznoveniya vidy rasteniy i zhivotnykh]. Ed. B.A. Voronov. Khabarovsk: Izd. IVEP, 2000. 464 p. (In Russ.)
- 80. Red Data Book of Sakhalin Oblast [*Krasnaya kniga Sakhalinskoy oblasti*]. Eds. G.A. Voronov, O.I. Panteleeva *et al.* Sakhalin: Sakhalinsk. kn. izd., 2000. 192 p. (In Russ.)
- 81. Red Data Book of the Northern Far East [Krasnaya kniga Severa Dalnego Vostoka]. Ed. A.Ya. Kondratyev. Moscow: Penta, 1998. 292 p. (In Russ.)
- 82. Red Data Book of the Republic of Sakha (Yakutia). Vol. 1: Rare and Threatened Species of Plants and Fungi [*Krasnaya kniga Respubliki Sakha (Yakutii). T. 1. Redkie i nakhodyashchiesya pod ugrozoy ischeznoveniya vidy rasteniy i gribov*]. Ed. A.P. Isaev. Yakutsk: Sakhapoligraphizdat, 2000. 256 p. (In Russ.)
- 83. Red Data Book of Yakut ASSR: Rare and Threatened Species of Animals [Krasnaya kniga Yakutskoy ASSR. Redkie i nakhodyashchiesya pod ugrozoy ischeznoveniya vidy zhivotnykh]. Ed. N.G. Solomonov. Novosibirsk: Nauka, 1987. 100 p. (In Russ.)

#### **Annex D. Protected Nature Areas**

FSC Criteria 7.1 and 5.6 require from the forest managers to know the borders of protected nature areas (PNA), as well as to take into account the relevant restrictions on forest management applicable to them when planning felling operations.

Thus, **indicator 7.1.3** demands: "The forest management plan contains information on environmental limitations during forestry operations, including measures for protection of HCVF, representative samples of existing ecosystems, habitats of rare, threatened and endangered species and other key biotopes and biodiversity protection measures during harvesting operations (see Criteria 6.2–6.4)", while **indicator 7.1.4:** "The forest management plan contains information on relative position and correspondence of different types of protected sites, including representative samples of existing ecosystems, and HCVF (see also Criteria 6.4 and 9.1)".

**Indicator 5.6.2** demands: "The following volumes of timber are excluded from the applicable annual allowable cut:

- harvesting of which is prohibited or restricted by the regime of protected sites;
- harvesting of which is permitted but would not be possible due to their economic inaccessibility or insufficient growing stock (economically inaccessible forests)."

In addition, all protected nature areas (PNA) are now becoming considered as a separate subcategory of high conservation value forests **HCV 1.1** (see *Annex E*). PNA sometimes may be present in a leskhoz (district level forest management administration unit) or even in the lease areas under certification. It should be mentioned that as a rule PNA are not given into lease for forest use (especially for commercial harvesting), nevertheless it is not directly prohibited by law. Besides that, some forests that seek FSC certification could contain candidate protected areas. Furthermore, some lands in the area under certification can be reserved for establishment of a PNA.

Sometimes it is problematic to find official information about candidate protected areas, especially at the regional level, because of the complicate and multi-stage procedure of their establishment. Table D1 lists candidate zapovedniks (strict nature reserves) and national parks in forest and forest-steppe zones of the Russian Federation to be created in 2001–2010 according to the Decree by the government of the Russian Federation as of May 23 2001 No. 725-r.

Enterprise seeking FSC certification, which have a PNA within area of their operations and/or have lands reserved for establishment of PNA, should take into account the following recommendations when making decisions regarding forest management restrictions in such areas:

- 1. In PNA of federal, regional and local level established according to the legislation of the Russian Federation and its administrative regions, all logging operations, building of forest roads and other communications, placement of timber landings, oils and lubricants, forest villages and temporary camps should not take place, if prescribed by management restrictions of the relevant PNA.
- 2. In the rest of the PNA, on lands reserved for their establishment, as well as in areas included into federal and regional lists (schemes, programs) of the development of PNA approved by the relevant federal and regional authorities, logging can be done only using methods that ensure preservation of the most valuable nature objects and their high conservation values. The same refers to planning and building of forest roads and other communications, as well as placement of any elements of infrastructure.
- 3. For areas for which there are official and justified proposals on establishing PNA prepared by scientific, non-governmental, and state environmental organizations, logging and road building shall be carried out only upon conduction of special field surveys with participation of organizations which developed relevant proposals. These surveys are conducted with the aim to specify conservation values of the forest, to identify the permissibility of logging operations in it and to agree with the stakeholders on plans for forest management and infrastructure development in these forests.

**Table D1**. List of candidate zapovedniks (strict nature reserves) and national parks in forest and forest-steppe zones of the Russian Federation to be created in 2001–2010 (with changes)

Location	Name	Area,	Brief characteristic
	77 1 1 1 7	thou. ha	4.66 M 4 M
Zapovedniks (Strict Scientific Nature Reserves)			
Altay Republic	Sailyugemskiy	241	Unique mountain taiga landscapes of Southern
17 1 17	TT. 1	_	Altay, mountain ridge Saylyugem
Krasnodar Kray	Utrish	5	Natural complexes of dry subtropics on the
T : 1011 4	T 1 11'	140	Caucasus's Black Sea coast
Leningrad Oblast	Ingermalandskiy	14.2	Islands and waters in the eastern part of the
Nava sihimala	Danahinalriy	1.5	Gulf of Finland in the Baltic Sea
Novosibirsk	Barabinskiy	15	Forest–steppe nature complexes of the
Oblast Oblast	Charatan Tau	0.5	Barabinskaya lowland near the Chany Lake
Orenburg Oblast	Shaytan-Tau	9.5	Forest–steppe nature complexes and Shaytan-
Ctarmon al Vuori	Ctormonolalzir	10	Tau mountain range
Stavropol Kray	Stavropolskiy	19	Natural complexes of steppes and forests in ravines, outskirts of the Stavropol elevation,
	lesostepnoy		and mountains of Strizhament and Bryk
Tomsk Oblast	Yuzhnotaezhny	83	Southern taiga nature complexes of the
Tollisk Oblast	pikhtovy	03	Western Siberian plain
	pikittovy	National National	1
Arkhangelsk	Onezhskoe	300	Nature complexes of virgin northern taiga
Oblast	pomorye	300	forests on the Onega peninsula
Bryansk Oblast	Pridesnyanskiy	104	Mixed coniferous–broadleaf forests and
Diyansk Oblast	Tridesityanskiy	104	landscapes on the Desna floodplain
Chuvash	Zavolzhye	32	Nature complexes on the Volga's left bank,
Republic	Zavoiznye	32	picturesque forest lakes, medicinal sapropelic
repusite			mud, and sources of drinking medicinal waters
Khabarovsk Kray	Anyuyskiy	430	Anyuy basin and Korean pine–broadleaf and
			broadleaf forests on the foothills
Khabarovsk Kray	Shantarskie	512	Island and marine ecosystems of the Shantar
	ostrova		archipelago and waters of the Sea of Okhotsk
Orenburg Oblast	Buzlukskiy bor	56	Unique pine stand in the steppe zone
Primorskiy Kray	Sredneussuriyskiy	190	Central part of the Sikhote–Alin mountain
	(Udegeyskya		range, basin of the Bolshaya Ussurka river, and
	legenda)		Korean pine-broadleaf mountain forests
Primorskiy Kray	Verkneussuriyskiy	82	Western slope of the Sikhote–Alin mountain
	(Zov tigra)		range, and coniferous-broadleaf forests
Ulyanovsk	Sengileyevskie	50	Picturesque forestland on the shores of the
Oblast	gory		Kuybyshev reservoir

The Table D2 lists decisions by regional administrations of the Russian Federation to establish new protected nature areas and to reserve lands for them, which are available in the reference legal systems. Information on existing and candidate protected nature areas should be requested from the staff of leskhozes, regional administrations, and regional forestry agencies.

It should be also mentioned that the existing and planned PNA could contain features that meet the criteria of high conservation value forests (**FSC Principle 9**). Such areas could be also treated as representative samples of existing ecosystems (**Criterion 6.4**). Thus, C**riterion 6.4** requires: "Representative samples of existing ecosystems within the landscape shall be protected in their natural state and recorded on maps, appropriate to the scale and intensity of operations and the uniqueness of the affected resources" (see further Annex E).

**Table D2.** Available regional-level official decisions on candidate protected areas and on reservation of lands for them

Region	Name of Document
	Central Federal District
Tver Oblast	Decree of the administration of Tver Oblast as of March 21 2003 No. 71-pa On
	reserving lands in the vicinity of Tver State University's Botanical Garden
Voronezh Oblast	Decree of the administration of Voronezh Oblast as of October 25 2000 No. 1001
	On development of a network of protected nature areas
Yaroslavl Oblast	Decree of the governor of Yaroslavl Oblast as of June 1 1998 No. 358 On
	development of a system of protected nature areas of Yaroslavl Oblast
	Northwestern Federal District
Murmansk Oblast	Decree of the government of Murmansk Oblast as of February 27 2003 No. 53-PP/4
	On reserving lands for creating state complex nature zakaznik [reserve] Laplandskiy
	les
Republic of	Decree of the head of the government of the Republic of Karelia as of November 4
Karelia	1996 No. 938 On reserving lands for establishing national parks in Suoyarvi,
	Muyezero and Kalevala national regions and in the town of Kostomuksha of the
	Republic of Karelia in 1996–2000
	Volga Federal District
Chuvash Republic	Decree of the government of Chuvash Republic as of June 22 1993 No. 180 On
	development of the protected nature areas network in Chuvash Republic
Orenburg Oblast	Law of Orenburg Oblast as of November 9 2004 No. 1534/260-iii-OZ On reserving
	lands at the territory of Orenburg Oblast
Perm Oblast	Decree of the governor of Perm Oblast as of August 1 2001 No. 188 On reserving
	lands for establishing protected nature areas in 2001-2015
Republic of	Decree of the government of the Republic of Bashkortostan as of October 1 2002
Bashkortostan	No. 293 On reserving lands for establishing protected nature areas in the Republic
	of Bashkortostan
	Decree of the government of the Republic of Bashkortostan as of January 29 1997
	No. 74-r.
	Note: Target program for establishing and developing the protected nature areas
Danublic of	network in the Republic of Bashkortostan for 1997–2000
Republic of	Decree of the president of the Republic of Tatarstan as of January 22 2004 No. UP-
Tatarstan	26 On reserving lands in the Republic of Tatarstan  Decree of the government of the Republic of Tatarstan as of October 13 2000 No.
	730 On reserving lands for establishing protected nature areas
	Decree of the government of the Republic of Tatarstan as of January 18 1996 No. 22
	On preserving and developing the protected nature areas network in the Republic of
	Tatarstan
	Ural Federal District
Khanty-Mansi	Decree of the government of Khanty–Mansi Autonomous Okrug as of September 20
Autonomous	2002 No. 519-p On approving of the land planning project for the Samarovskiy
Okrug	Chugas nature park and reserving lands (sites)
Kurgan Oblast	Decree of the administration (government) of Kurgan Oblast as of July 6 2000 No.
	381 On reserving lands where the lakes Gorkoe, Zemkovo, Sukhanovo, and
	Mironovskoe of Kurtamyshskiy district are located to subsequently award them with
	a status of medicinal and healing territories
	U "

Region	Name of Document
Tyumen Oblast	Decree of the governor of Tyumen Oblast as of October 21 2002 No. 383 On
•	measures to identify and reserve lands for regional level protected nature areas.
	Note: Sketch map of developing a system of protected nature areas of regional
	significance in Tyumen Oblast over the period of 2002–2005
	Decree of the administration of Tyumen Oblast as of February 20 2004 No. 50 On
	amendments to the scheme of development and location of the system of protected
	nature areas of regional level in Tyumen Oblast
	Siberian Federal District
Altay Republic	Decree of the administration of Altay Kray as of April 6 2001 No. 251 On the
7 1	scheme of development and location of protected nature areas in Altay Kray
	Decree of the government of Altay Republic as of August 18 2003 No. 225 On the
	scheme of location and development of protected nature areas in Altay Republic for
	the period up to the year 2010
Krasnoyarsk Kray	Decree of the administration of Krasnoyarsk Kray as of February 12 1998 No. 86-p
	On the scheme of development and location of protected nature areas in
	Krasnoyarsk Kray for the period up to the year 2005
	Decree of the administration council of Krasnoyarsk Kray as of July 11 2002
	No. 252-p On reserving lands for subsequent establishment of the regional level
	nature park Kanskoe belogorye
	Decree of the administration council of Krasnoyarsk Kray as of November 3 2004
	No. 220-p On reserving lands for subsequent establishment of the regional level
	biological zakaznik [reserve] Saratovskoye boloto
	Decree of the administration council of Krasnoyarsk Kray as of February 28 2003
	No. 54-p On reserving lands for subsequent establishment of the regional level
	protected nature area Symskiy Nature Park
	Decree of the administration council of Krasnoyarsk Kray as of May 20 2002 No.
	158-p On reserving lands for subsequent establishment of regional level natural
	zakazniks [reserves].
	Note: Reserving lands for establishment of protected nature areas of regional
	significance Gagulskaya kotlovina, Tokhtay and Kantegirskiy
	Decree of the administration of Krasnoyarsk Kray as of June 21 2000 No. 467-p On
	reserving lands for subsequent establishment of zakazniks [nature reserves].
	Note: Reserving lands for establishment of regional level protected nature areas
	Boguchanskiy, Chadobetskiy, Kezhemskoye mnogoostrovye, Deshembinskiy,
	Ognyanskiy, Mashukovskiy, Reka Tatarka and Motyginskoye mnogoostrovye
Novosibirsk	Decision of Novosibirsk Regional Council of Deputies as of December 18 1996 On
Oblast	prospective scheme of development and location of the protected nature areas
	network in Novosibirsk Oblast
Omsk Oblast	
	Law of Omsk Oblast as of November 9 2004 No. 563-OZ On the regional target
	Law of Omsk Oblast as of November 9 2004 No. 563-OZ On the regional target program Development of protected nature areas for preserving game animals in
	program Development of protected nature areas for preserving game animals in
Koryak	program Development of protected nature areas for preserving game animals in Omsk Oblast for the period up to the year 2010
Koryak Autonomous	program Development of protected nature areas for preserving game animals in Omsk Oblast for the period up to the year 2010  Far Eastern Federal District
•	program Development of protected nature areas for preserving game animals in Omsk Oblast for the period up to the year 2010  Far Eastern Federal District  Decree of the administration of Koryak Autonomous Okrug as of March 30 2004
Autonomous	program Development of protected nature areas for preserving game animals in Omsk Oblast for the period up to the year 2010  Far Eastern Federal District  Decree of the administration of Koryak Autonomous Okrug as of March 30 2004 No. 95 On reserving forest lands for a protected nature area in Koryak Autonomous
Autonomous	program Development of protected nature areas for preserving game animals in Omsk Oblast for the period up to the year 2010  Far Eastern Federal District  Decree of the administration of Koryak Autonomous Okrug as of March 30 2004 No. 95 On reserving forest lands for a protected nature area in Koryak Autonomous Okrug.
Autonomous	program Development of protected nature areas for preserving game animals in Omsk Oblast for the period up to the year 2010  Far Eastern Federal District  Decree of the administration of Koryak Autonomous Okrug as of March 30 2004 No. 95 On reserving forest lands for a protected nature area in Koryak Autonomous Okrug.  Note: Reserving lands for establishment of forest zakaznik [reserve] of district
Autonomous Okrug	program Development of protected nature areas for preserving game animals in Omsk Oblast for the period up to the year 2010  Far Eastern Federal District  Decree of the administration of Koryak Autonomous Okrug as of March 30 2004 No. 95 On reserving forest lands for a protected nature area in Koryak Autonomous Okrug.  Note: Reserving lands for establishment of forest zakaznik [reserve] of district significance Severno-Ayankinskiy listvenichno-redkolesny

## **Annex E. High Conservation Value Forests**

#### **Categories of HCVF**

**Principle 9** of FSC Principles and Criteria for Responsible Forest Stewardship "Maintenance of high conservation value forests" has been formulated by FSC in its current form in 1999 after the revision of the standards. The implementation of this principle requires from forest managers that "Management activities in high conservation value forests shall maintain or enhance the attributes which define such forests. Decisions regarding high conservation value forests shall always be considered in the context of a precautionary approach".

FSC considers high conservation value forests those that possess one or more of the following attributes:

- a) forest areas containing globally, regionally or nationally significant:
  - concentrations of biodiversity values (e.g. endemism, endangered species, refugia) (Category HCV 1); and/or
  - large landscape level forests, contained within, or containing the management unit, where viable populations of most if not all naturally occurring species exist in natural patterns of distribution and abundance (**HCV 2**);
- b) forest areas that are in or contain rare, threatened or endangered ecosystems (HCV 3);
- c) forest areas that provide basic services of nature in critical situations (e.g. watershed protection, erosion control) (HCV 4);
- d) forest areas fundamental to meeting basic needs of local communities (e.g. subsistence, health) (HCV 5) and/or critical to local communities' traditional cultural identity (areas of cultural, ecological, economic or religious significance identified in cooperation with such local communities) (HCV 6).

Currently, the HCV categories are further subdivided to subcategories (Jennings et al, 2005):

**HCV 1.** Areas containing globally, regionally or nationally significant concentrations of biodiversity values (e.g. endemism, endangered species, refugia):

- **HCV 1.1.** Protected nature areas.
- **HCV 1.2.** Threatened and endangered species.
- **HCV 1.3.** Endemic species.
- **HCV 1.4.** Critical temporal use.
- **HCV 2.** Globally, regionally or nationally significant large landscape-level areas where viable populations of most if not all naturally occurring species exist in natural patterns of distribution and abundance (*no further subdivision*).
- **HCV 3.** Areas that are in or contain rare, threatened or endangered ecosystems (*no further subdivision*).
- **HCV 4.** Areas that provide basic services of nature in critical situations (e.g. watershed protection, erosion control):
  - **HCV 4.1.** Forest critical to water catchments.
  - **HCV 4.2.** Forest critical to erosion control.
  - **HCV 4.3.** Forest providing barriers to destructive fires.
- **HCV 5.** Areas fundamental to meeting basic needs of local communities (e.g. subsistence, health) (no further subdivision).
- **HCV 6.** Areas critical to local communities' traditional cultural identity (areas of cultural, ecological, economic or religious significance identified in cooperation with such local communities) (*no further subdivision*).

# HCV 1: Forest areas containing globally, regionally or nationally significant concentrations of biodiversity values (e.g. endemism, endangered species, refugia)

The National Framework FSC Standard interprets the category **HCV 1** (first part of the article a)) as "a territory (ecoregion) characterized by globally or nationally significant concentrations of biodiversity values".

At the **global level** the standard considers as **HCV 1** areas of the WWF's map of the Global 200 ecoregions (Olson and Dinerstein, 1998) – the list of the 233 globally most biologically outstanding habitats. The list of such ecoregions is the result of regional analyses of biodiversity across the Earth's continents and oceans. The ecoregions were selected for all major types of terrestrial, freshwater and marine habitats (MHT). Overall 26 such MHT has been described. Each MHT was separately analyzed for seven biogeographic realms. Finally, ecoregions that represented the most distinctive examples of biodiversity for a given major habitat type were identified within each biogeographic realm (Russia refers to the Paleartic). They were chosen based on the following parameters:

- species richness;
- endemism;
- higher taxonomic uniqueness (e.g. unique genera or families, relict species or communities, primitive lineages);
- extraordinary ecological or evolutionary phenomena (e.g. extraordinary adaptive radiations, intact large vertebrate assemblages, presence of migrations of large vertebrates); and
- global rarity of the major habitat type.

Only the biodiversity value of ecoregions sharing the same major habitat type were compared because the relative magnitude of parameters such as richness and endemism varies widely among them. Each selected WWF Global 200 ecoregion (further referred to as "WWF ecoregion") can be constituted by several ecoregions representing one of the MHT (i.e. terrestrial, freshwater and marine ecoregions).

Of the WWF ecoregions occurring in Russia, the following ones most closely relate to forest ecosystems:

- Russian Far East Temperate Forests (WWF ecoregion code is 71), which include the terrestrial
  ecoregions Ussuri broadleaf and mixed forests (terrestrial ecoregion code is PA0443) and South
  Sakhalin–Kurile mixed forests (PA0438);
- European–Mediterranean Montane Mixed Forests (77), which include the terrestrial ecoregion Crimean Submediterranean forest complex (PA0416), whose Russian part is represented by northwest flanks of the Caucasus;
- Caucasus—Anatolian—Hyrcanian Temperate Forests (78), which include the terrestrial ecoregion Caucasus mixed forests (PA0408);
- Altai-Sayan Montane Forests (79), which include the terrestrial ecoregions Altay montane forest and forest steppe (PA0502) and Sayan montane conifer forests (PA0519);
- Ural Mountains Taiga (83);
- Eastern Siberian Taiga (84);
- Kamchatka Taiga and Grasslands (85), which include the terrestrial ecoregions Kamchatka–Kurile meadows and sparse forests (PA0603), Kamchatka–Kurile taiga (PA0604) and Kamchatka Mountain tundra and forest tundra (PA1105); and
- Fennoscandia alpine tundra and taiga (115).

In addition, there are two freshwater WWF ecoregions, whose existence significantly depends on forests on their basins.

- Russian Far East Rivers and Deltas (181) (although this ecoregion mainly consists of water bodies, which are partially included in the Ussuri broadleaf and mixed forests WWF ecoregion;
- Lake Baikal (184), which is partly included in the Eastern Siberian Taiga and Altay-Sayan Montane Forests WWF ecoregions.

More detailed characteristics of these ecoregions can be obtained on the site <a href="http://www.panda.org/about\_wwf/where\_we\_work/ecoregions/ecoregions.cfm">http://www.panda.org/about\_wwf/where\_we\_work/ecoregions/ecoregions.cfm</a>, as well as <a href="http://www.nationalgeographic.com/wildworld/profiles/g200\_index.html">http://www.nationalgeographic.com/wildworld/profiles/g200\_index.html</a>.

For the WWF ecoregions indicated above the following data on their natural values and guidelines for their identification and preservation should be used.

In all regions of the **Russian Far East Temperate Forests WWF Ecoregion** (Primorskiy kray, Khabarovsk kray, Jewish Autonomous Oblast and Sakhalin Oblast) "*Methodical Guidelines for Identification of Special Protection Forest Patches in Habitats and Sites of Occurrence of Rare and Protected Species of Animals and Plants, as well as of Valuable Game Animals in Forest of the Southern Russian Far East"* prepared by Far Eastern Forest Research Institute (DalNIILKh) in 2006 shall be observed.

In Primorskiy kray, conservation of HCVF according to the publication "Mapping High Conservation Value Forests of Primorsky Kray, Russian Far East: Categories Important for Preservation of Flora and Vegetation" (Aksenov et al. 2006) shall be ensured. Habitats of rare, endangered and threatened plants shall be identified and preserved in accordance to the recommendations in the "Practical Guidebook for Forest Workers of Primorskiy Kray" (Skvortsov et al, 2006).

In all regions of the **Altay-Sayan Montane Forests WWF Ecoregion** (Altay, Buryat, Tuva and Khakassia republics, Altay and Krasnoyarsk krays and Irkutsk and Kemerovo oblasts), candidate protected areas listed in the protected nature areas development plan *Econet of the Altay–Sayan Region* (2001) shall be protected; materials of the inventory of intact forest landscapes shall be taken into account (Aksenov *et al*, 2003).

In all regions of the **Ural Mountains Taiga WWF Ecoregion** (Komi Republic (in part), Perm Kray (in part), Sverdlovsk, Tyumen, Orenburg and Chelyabinsk (in part) and Republic of Bashkortostan), materials of the inventory of intact forest landscapes should be taken into account (Aksenov *et al*, 2003).

In the Republic of Bashkortostan, protection of candidate areas included into the *Concept of the Protected Nature Areas in the Republic of Bashkortostan* (approved by the order of the Government of the Republic of Bashkortostan No. 209 as of September 1 2003) and Ecological Network of the Republic of Bashkortostan (Pazhenkov *et al.* 2005) should be ensured.

In Komi Republic, materials of the inventories of pristine forests (devstvennye lesa) should be considered (Pristine forests..., 2004).

Areas being identified under the umbrella of various international programs also fall under criteria of the **international level HCV 1** (see below Ramsar wetlands of international importance and important bird areas).

The FSC standard for controlled wood (FSC-STD-40-005 (V2-0) EN) also considers as **international level HCV 1** global biodiversity hotspots (areas with high biodiversity that is threatened) identified by the Conservation International. Globally, Conservation International has identified 25 such areas (see <a href="http://www.biodiversityhotspots.org/xp/Hotspots/">http://www.biodiversityhotspots.org/xp/Hotspots/</a>). The identification criteria included the total number of species occurring in the area, the number of endemic species present only in ecosystems of that area and the degree to which that area is threatened. Within Russia occurs part of the Caucasus hotspot represented by the ecosystems of the Northern Caucasus, which include the respective WWF Global 200 Ecoregions Nos. 77 and 78. Under the aegis of Conservation International a special foundation *Critical Ecosystems Partnership Fund* (CEPF) has been established, whose aim is to identify areas, which require special conservation measures, and to collect information on their biodiversity.

All protected nature areas, including candidate areas, refer to the subcategory **HCV 1.1** (see Annex D).

There are no common set of criteria for the **national** and **regional level HCV 1** so far. There are also no readily available maps that show location of such areas. Therefore, the decision should be taken on a case by case basis using wide scale stakeholder consultations and involving knowledgeable experts.

As basis for such analysis we propose to use national and regional red data books and scientific publications. There are a number of programs aimed at identification of internationally biologically valuable nature sites using a variety of criteria, for example:

- Important Bird Areas (IBA, or KOTR in Russian), the program by Birdlife International and its Russian affiliate Russian Bird Conservation Union);
- Important Plant Areas in Europe (program by World Conservation Union–IUCN);
- Ramsar sites (according to the Convention on Wetlands of International Importance, Especially as Waterfowl Habitat).

The designation of the important bird areas (IBAs) is the program by Russian Bird Conservation Union. Its international component is part of the global program on important bird areas (IBAs) by the Birdlife International, which has been developed in the 1980s. The Important Bird Areas are sites, which are of importance for birds because they use them as breeding and staging sites, wintering grounds and migratory bottlenecks. In the first turn they include:

- Sites that regularly hold significant numbers of a globally threatened species.
- Sites with relatively significant numbers of other rare or vulnerable species (subspecies or populations), including those listed in the international, Russian and regional red data books.
- Sites that hold a significant assemblage of endemic species or the species whose breeding distributions are largely or wholly confined to one biome.
- Sites that have exceptionally large numbers of migratory or congregatory species.

These are the most critical patches of land and water surface, whose preservation will bring a maximum conservation effect for particular species, subspecies or geographic populations of bird species. The area can be recognized as an IBA based on quantitative criteria developed by the Birdlife International, which are the same within large regions. In Russia there are three such regions: 1) European Russia; 2) Western Siberia (from the Ural mountains to the Yenisey River); and 3) Eastern Siberia and the Far East. IBAs can be identified at international, national and regional levels.

As of 2006 more than 1100 IBAs of different levels have been described in Russia, 700 of them belonging to the international level. Information on 218 IBAs of European Russia and 170 IBAs of Eastern Asian Russia are included in European (Heath and Evans, 2000) and Asian (Important Birds Areas in Asia, 2004) catalogs of IBAs of international importance. Presently, considering already published volumes on the IBAs in European Russia and Western Siberia (Important Bird Areas in Russia, 2000; 2006), the first stage of the inventories of IBA of international importance has been completed. These publications contain criteria for IBA identification, lists of bird species and information on a particular IBA, including proposed management methods. Information on IBAs in Eastern Siberia and the Russian Far East collected by the Russian Bird Conservation Union has not been yet published. The second stage presumes protection of identified IBAs and a gap analysis to learn whether the identified IBAs are sufficient to provide conservation of a particular bird species. Such data will be used to complete IBA inventory. IBAs should be treated as candidate protected areas.

As a result of the implementation of the Ramsar Convention, there are 35 wetlands of international importance, especially as waterfowl habitat, in Russia. However, inventories of valuable wetlands are not completed. Specialists estimate (Wetlands on the Shadow List..., 2000) that there are at least several thousand such sites in Russia, each of those with an area ranging from several tens to several hundreds of million hectares.

Two groups of criteria have been proposed for identification of Ramsar sites:

- reference, rare or unique wetlands;
- wetlands of international importance for biodiversity conservation.

A decision to grant such status to a wetland is taken by the Government of the Russian Federation if the Secretariat of the Convention decides that the area nominated meets the relevant criteria in accordance with the established procedure. The regime of such an area is specified in a Certificate of Wetland adopted by the regional administration. These statutes have not been adopted on time for all wetlands. If Ramsar wetlands are established within the existed protected

areas, their regimes already include land use restrictions. However, the effective implementation of the Convention may require stricter restrictions (e.g. for many protected areas that have less strict regimes) or introduction of them. To ensure the implementation of the convention, wetlands of national and local importance should acquire the respective status, while sites of all three categories should become protected areas.

Each signatory country should prepare a shadow list of Ramsar wetlands to be included into the convention. In Russia such a "shadow list", which includes 166 areas, has been developed by the experts of the All-Russia Research Institute for Nature Conservation on a request from the former Committee for Environment Protection of the Russian Federation.

# HCV 2: Forest areas containing globally, regionally or nationally significant large landscape level forests, contained within, or containing the management unit, where viable populations of most if not all naturally occurring species exist in natural patterns of distribution and abundance

The National Framework FSC Standard interprets the category **HCV 2** (second part of the article a)) as a forest area that "is part of a large forest landscape minimally disturbed by human agency (or contains such a landscape)".

Currently the most fully the **category HCV 2** at the **international** and **national levels** corresponds to the concept of intact forest landscapes – the term proposed by Global Forest Watch. The detailed maps of such areas can be found in the *Atlas of Russia's Intact Forest Landscapes* (Aksenov *et al.*, 2002; 2003; <a href="http://www.forest.ru/rus/publications/intact/">http://www.forest.ru/rus/publications/intact/</a>). More details about peculiar ecological features of these forests, their conservation values as well as the identification methods can be learned from *The Last Intact Forest Landscapes of Northern European Russia* (Yaroshenko *et al*, 2001a; 2001b). A similar approach to identification of large forest landscapes is used in the FSC Boreal Standard for Canada – the country closest to Russia in terms of its natural conditions.

Within the context of this research, an intact forest landscape is understood as a landscape in the forest zone greater than 50 thousand hectares that is whole and natural, undivided by infrastructure and almost entirely unaffected by human activities. It is large enough to support viable populations of large predatory vertebrates and keep most of the territory free of edge effects. It typically contains a mosaic of ecosystems (i.e. it is more than a forest) and has a natural fire regime.

There are no common criteria of **HCV 2** at the **regional level**. However, it is clear that properties and minimum size of such forests may differ from those adopted at the **national level**, and the decision should be made in each particular case based on wide scale stakeholder consultations.

The priority of protection intact (low-disturbed) areas is stated in the Article 4 of the Act on Environment Protection: "Priority in protection should be given to natural ecological systems, natural landscapes and natural complexes unaffected by human agency."

#### HCV 3: Forest areas that are in or contain rare, threatened or endangered ecosystems

The National Framework FSC Standard interprets the category HCV 3 as a "forest area that contains rare, threatened or endangered ecosystems". Rare, threatened or endangered ecosystems are ecosystems that are rare (i.e. overall occupy insignificant area in a particular landscape, region, natural zone or globally) due to various reasons (e.g. the uniqueness of natural and historical conditions of development or the results of human agency). There are no common criteria for identification of such ecosystems, neither national lists or the lists of respective areas. For some regions criteria and lists of areas may exist, which should be taken into account during certification. When such developments are absent, rare ecosystems should be interpreted as rare forest types, in particular those that are at the range of their occurrence in a particular region (e.g. noble broadleaf forests in the taiga zone).

# HCV 4: Forest areas that provide basic services of nature in critical situations (e.g. watershed protection, erosion control)

The National Framework FSC Standard interprets the category **HCV 4** as the "area that provide basic services of nature in critical situations."

From the practical standpoint, the purpose of this category is to identify those forests, whose state is critically important to maintain the integral ecological stability (functions) of the neighboring areas. Altogether there are four main aspects of such ecological stability:

- forests as unique sources of drinking water for local people;
- forests critical to water catchments by preventing flooding, droughts as well as controlling stream flow regulation and water quality;
- forests that provide terrain stability, including control of erosion, landslides, avalanches etc.; and
- forests providing barriers to catastrophic fires.

Areas with such forests can be found in different categories of protective forests and OZU designated in forests of all groups according the Forest Code, although some areas that meet criteria for such forests could not have any respective formal status.

The following categories of protective forests could be mentioned:

- forest in water protective zones;
- forest critical for erosion control;
- protective forest belts along federal, republican and oblast level railroads and motorways;
- federal protective forest strips;
- ribbon-like pine forests;
- forests in desert, semidesert, steppe, forest-steppe and forest-poor mountain areas important for environmental protection;
- forests in green zones of settlements and park forests;
- forests of first and second zones of sanitary protection of water supply sources; and
- forests of first, second and third zones of areas of sanitary (mountain sanitary) protection of resorts.

Parameters of OZU and guidelines on their identification (still effective under the new Forest Code) can be found in the order by the Russian Federal Forest Service as of December 30 1993 No. 348 *On Approval of Basic Guidelines for Establishment of Special Protection Forest Patches.* OZU are identified based on the significance of forests, their location, functions and technical and economical justification, using criteria and normative documents listed in the Table 1 of the aforementioned order. These parameters can be more detailed and specific in the particular administrative region of the Russian Federation.

In accordance to the Forest Code, forest management can be prohibited or restricted in protective forests categories and OZU.

HCV 5 and HCV 6: Forest areas fundamental to meeting basic needs of local communities (e.g. subsistence, health) and/or critical to local communities' traditional cultural identity (areas of cultural, ecological, economic or religious significance identified in cooperation with such local communities)

In the National Framework FSC Standard the categories **HCV 5** and **6** are unified and are interpreted as "areas that are of special significance for local communities, including religious, cultural, ecological or economic significance (sites that local communities regard as more significant when compared with surrounding forest areas)." The identification of such areas is regulated by **Indicator 3.3.1**: "Sites of special cultural, ecological, economic or religious significance for indigenous peoples have been identified in cooperation with them and recognized."

Furthermore, **Indicator 9.1.5** says that in part not covered by **Indicator 3.3.1**: "It is determined whether the given forest area is of special significance for local communities, including religious, cultural, ecological or economic significance (sites that local communities regard as more significant when compared with surrounding forests)."

These HCV categories include various objects. Several uses of forest resources that are of special significance for local, including indigenous communities can be recognized (HCV 5).

Thus, in accordance to the federal and regional laws traditional land use areas (TLUA) can be established in lands of indigenous peoples. TLUA are a type of protected area and should be considered as **HCV 1.1**.

The forest manager should also check who has the lease rights for game resources of the area (they may belong to some agricultural production cooperatives, indigenous community, society of hunters and fishermen etc.). Rights of these organizations can be confirmed by lease agreement.

Sometimes, hunters and fishermen may use forest resources without taking them into lease on the basis of customary rights. These people are often the former workers of enterprises that have disappeared or gone bankrupt during unstable economic conditions of the last decades. Justification of the rights of such people for traditional use of lands may demand consultations with experts.

Of a special value for local communities could be areas where they traditionally collect berries and mushrooms, hunt and fish. Forest can be considered as common land of the village. For example, collection of non-timber products often does not imply even informal documenting of land rights. In order to clarify such situations, local authorities (selsovet, skhod) should be contacted.

Indigenous representatives may claim lands, which have been traditionally used by their ancestors and where they want to resume traditional use of natural resources. The 20<sup>th</sup> century has been known for abundant enforced movements of people, while indigenous peoples' rights had been poorly documented in the past. As a result of that land claims of descendents of the people that lived in the area are difficult to prove. Therefore, in accordance to a globally adopted practice, such claims should be considered in relation to a local indigenous community. The matter of the claim may be assessed by an ethnological expert.

For city and town residents green areas in the neighborhood are of significant importance, even though these zones sometimes do not belong to the area of a particular municipality. In this case the user of forest resources is the local community, whose interests could be represented by the local administration. According to the Forest Code such areas may fall under various categories of protective forests (e.g. forest in green zones of settlements and park forests, first, second and third zones of the area of sanitary (mountain sanitary) protection of resorts, forests for collection of Siberian and Korean pine nuts (kernels) etc.) and OZU (e.g. forest patches in the neighborhood of villages (priposlekovye i zapolnye lesa) and of gardeners settlements). Part of the areas that meet criteria for such forests may not have any formal status.

Sacred sites (sacred groves, cult objects, burial sites etc.) are of great value for indigenous communities or ethnic groups (**HCV 6**). In many cases, economical or cultural significance of the forest for local people or indigenous groups can by many times higher than forestry.

Complete mapping of such forests is only possible in close cooperation with local people and indigenous communities and by taking into consideration their concerns and interests. Identification of sacred sites can be complicated by a number of reasons. For example, according to beliefs of some indigenous peoples a sacred site will lose its spiritual force after its location becomes known to other people. Therefore, mapping of such sites should be done very carefully. More on indigenous peoples see *Annex F*.

#### HCVF, Representative Samples of Existing Ecosystems and Ecological Networks

**Criterion 6.4** requires that: "Representative samples of existing ecosystems within the landscape shall be protected in their natural state and recorded on maps, appropriate to the scale and intensity of operations and the uniqueness of the affected resources." The purpose of this criterion is to create a network of protected sites (with prohibition or restriction of forestry

operations), which are functionally interconnected and provide conservation of flora and fauna, landscapes, ecosystems and habitats in the applicant's area.

In practice this means that such a network should:

- include all types of ecosystems and landscapes occurring in the area (i.e. is representative);
- provide preservation of regionally and locally rare, threatened or endangered types of ecosystems and landscapes;
- ensure settling and migration of species; and
- serve a base for scientific research of natural processes in forests.

Existing and candidate protected areas, protective forests, relatively large special protection forest patches (OZU) and areas voluntarily set aside by the enterprise (e.g. HCVF) may function as representative samples of existing ecosystems within the landscape.

While the aforementioned protected sites may constitute the majority of the network of representative samples of existing ecosystems within the landscape, they do not always include the full diversity of landscapes, ecosystems and habitats. In such cases, the existing protected sites network shall be respectively extended. This is of special importance when the applicant's area lacks protected areas and HCVF, or they are almost absent.

In order to create a network of representative samples of existing ecosystems, the applicant should identify all types of protected sites (protected areas, protective forests and OZU) and HCVF; conduct a gap analysis for representativeness of these sites with respect to the management area; and extend the protected sites network, by adding the ecosystems that are lacking.

Mapping and protection of representative samples of existing ecosystems largely overlaps with an idea to establish the Pan-European Ecological Network – the result of realization of the Pan-European Biodiversity and Landscape Strategy (PEBLS) (see *Annex B*). The Declaration of the 3rd Ministerial Conference "Environment for Europe" formulated its goal to promote nature protection, both inside and outside protected areas, by establishing the Pan-European Ecological Network – a physical network of the core areas and other respective formations linked by corridors and supported by buffer zones to make easier settling and migration of species.

The establishment of Pan-European Ecological Network should promote achievement of the main goals of PEBLDS by solving the following tasks:

- to provide protection of the whole set of ecosystems, habitats, species and their genetic diversity as well as landscapes of European importance;
- to ensure that the habitats are big enough to create conditions favorable for species survival;
- to create necessary possibilities for settling and migration of species;
- to provide restoration of degraded components of the key systems and protection of the systems against potential threats.

The main idea of the concept of the ecological network is to avoid negative consequences of fragmentation of natural areas by enabling ecological links among them. According to the classical scheme of an ecological network, the latter should have the following components:

- *Core areas* to provide optimally achievable quality and quantity of ecological space to preserve the target object;
- *Transit areas*, or *corridors* and *stepping stones* to provide necessary links among the core areas using linear elements of the landscape (proper corridors), fragments of habitats (stepping stones) or landscape matrix;
- Buffer zones to protect the core and transit areas from potentially dangerous external effects;
- Restoration zones to provide restoration of one or another functional component of the ecological network.

An important remark is that in terms of spatial arrangement of protected nature areas, this system implies the use not only of legal norms but also of other possibilities, for example, economic stimuli, voluntary agreements with land owners etc. Therefore, the civil society, including land owners, local people and nongovernmental organizations, play an inevitable role in the functioning of ecological networks.

Some regions could already have such an ecological network designed. This should be taken into consideration when identifying HCVF and representative samples of existing ecosystems within the landscape as well as developing proposals on their management.

# **Management of HCVF**

Under management of HCVF we understand the implementation of such a management regime (forestry and other activities) in HCVF that permits maintenance and even enhancement of the respective high conservation value. The management regime is a set of management restrictions and/or requirements during implementation of harvesting, silvicultural and other activities.

Management of HCVF is covered in Criterion 9.3: "The management plan shall include and implement specific measures that ensure the maintenance and/or enhancement of the applicable conservation attributes consistent with the precautionary approach. These measures shall be specifically included in the publicly available management plan summary."

This means that to ensure preservation of the identified HCVF, forest managers should develop and thereafter implement a management regime, which is adapted to local conditions, available resources and existing knowledge.

#### Management system development in HCVF

A management regime for HCVF should be developed taking into account that any activity in HCVF should:

- always be based on the precautionary approach to minimize the risk that any irreversible damage is done to these critical values;
- always be within a framework of adaptive management, i.e. by planning, implementation, monitoring of effects and where necessary re-planning on the basis of the analysis of the results of monitoring (Jennings *et al*, 2005).

The main options for management (according to Jennings et al, 2005) are:

- "Protection of the area, through reserves, buffer zones, marking boundaries and control of activities that degrade the HCV (e.g. hunting of rare species). Where doubt exists as to whether any of the other management options are able to maintain or enhance the identified HCVs, then, consistent with the precautionary approach, protection will be the preferred option.
- Modifications or constraints on operations, or specific operational prescriptions/systems. Any threats to the HCVs which will be posed by operations or other activities in the forest will need to be identified and documented. This analysis should include all potential effects, both direct (e.g. harvesting operations or use of chemicals) and indirect (e.g. increased hunting as a result of better access along logging roads). The constraints that these threats will put on operations and other activities should also be examined. The decision to adopt any particular operation must be made based on the precautionary approach, which means that if you are not sure whether a particular activity might have a negative effect on a HCV, then you should assume that it will until you have collected information to prove that it does not. Examples of modified management regimes might include implementation of particular cutting cycles, retention of named species or maximizing notable habitat features such as areas suitable for nesting or feeding.
- **Restoration** activities where the forest area requires some remedial action, such as removal of alien species or enrichment of riparian functions".

### Precautionary Approach

At a current level of knowledge about forest ecosystems and their functioning nobody can be completely sure, which management regime better suits the aim of preservation of high

conservation value in each particular case. Therefore, when developing a management regime for HCVF, the precautionary approach should be implemented. In practice this means the following:

"Planning, management activities and monitoring of the attributes that make a forest management unit a HCVF should be designed, based on existing scientific and indigenous/traditional knowledge, to ensure that these attributes do not come under threat of significant reduction or loss of the attribute and that any threat of reduction or loss is detected long before the reduction becomes irreversible. Where a threat has been identified, early preventive action, including halting any potentially detrimental action, should be taken to avoid or minimize such a threat despite lack of full scientific certainty as to causes and effects of the threat" (FSC Principle 9 Advisory Panel, 2000).

#### Management guidelines for different categories of HCVF

In all HCVF (with rare exceptions), the following activities could be permitted if they are legal:

- public access for recreational activities (without camping and fires);
- hunting and fishing; and
- collection of non-timber forest products (mushrooms, berries, medicinal plants and cones). In all HCVF (with some exceptions), the following activities cannot be permitted:
- construction of long-lasting objects;
- installing of main communication lines;
- exploration and mining of mineral resources;
- alteration of the hydrological regime;
- activities implying high visitor pressure;
- use of chemical and biological control agents;
- use of fire (prescribed burning, burning of post-harvest residues etc.) with any goals; and
- introduction of exotic species.

The management regime should correspond to the HCV category. Thus, in order to ensure conservation of biodiversity and landscape (HCV 1-3) it is recommended to implement stricter management restrictions (including strict conservation). Protective functions can be maintained only by modifying management activities. In general, for all HCV 1, 3 and 6 prohibition of all or majority of harvesting and other silvicultural activities can be recommended. For HCV 4 and 5, commercial harvesting and other clearcuts shall be prohibited, in combination with additional management constraints. For HCV 2, prohibition of harvesting operations or zoning of the area (each zone may have its own management regime, although strict conservation zones are obligatory) can be recommended.

The management regime can be the same for the whole HCVF or vary depending on its zoning in accordance to high conservation values present and functions.

Currently, the following main options for management in HCVF may be recommended:

- announcement of a voluntary moratorium on any harvesting operation in the area and further promotion establishment of a protected area or reserving the land for a candidate area;
- establishment of protective forests and OZU; and
- canceling any lease for HCVF.

Creation of a protected area (either federal or regional ones) can be recommended for HCV 1 (sometimes), 2 and 6. Creation of OZU can be recommended for HCV 1 (in most cases), 3, 4 and 5. During prolonging a lease agreement, it is advisable to exclude a large wilderness area from the lease (basically for HCV 2).

All HCVF, with some exceptions, require measures on fire prevention and fire management.

In the **international level HCV 1** (**WWF Global 200 ecoregions**). In the specified ecoregions the following is recommended:

- 1. during any timber harvesting:
  - a) trees, shrubs and lianas, whose harvesting is prohibited by the federal or regional legislation, should be completely preserved;
  - b) trees, shrubs and lianas that are rare, threatened or endangered in a particular region (e.g. noble broadleaf trees, Siberian larch and Siberian pine in the taiga zone of European Russia) should be completely preserved;
  - c) residual trees of non-target species; large cavity trees; trees with large bird nests, seed trees; and large wind resistant dying trees and snags located at the distance from roads, landings etc. as well as such trees left within clumps and groups should be preserved to the extent it is possible:
- 2. rare, threatened or endangered ecosystem (forest) types should be preserved;
- 3. in evenaged dark (spruce and fir) coniferous, mixed coniferous—broadleaf and broadleaf forests, whose development is featured by the absence of fires, the preference should be given to selection cuts. (Note that broadleaf trees here mean noble broadleaf species like oak, ash, maple, elm, linden and alike);
- 4. the use in such forest types (see point 3) of narrow clear-strip cuts and clear cuts is only possible when they correspond to peculiarities of the natural dynamics of a particular forest type and are aimed to minimize their impact (e.g. the width of strips, including technological parts of the harvest area, should be limited by a height of the dominant tree canopy or small-size clearcuts shall be used, thus providing preservation of groundcover and soils);
- 5. the use of clearcuts in other forest types should mimic the natural dynamics of a particular forest type and provide retention of seed trees, ecologically valuable trees (see point 1) as well as critical habitats (key biotopes) and, depending on a situation, of young growth and small-size trees; and
- 6. the use of fire with any purpose should be excluded.

When planning forestry operations, all available materials on identified HCVF, wetlands of conservation importance, important bird areas, protective forests and OZU as well as candidate areas for protected nature areas or ecological networks should be considered.

In addition, systematic efforts should be undertaken to ensure identification and conservation of rare, threatened and endangered species habitats on the basis of the Red-data Book of the Russian Federation or relevant regional red-data books or lists of such species.

**National and regional level HCV 1.** The management regime in **HCV 1.1** (**protected nature areas**) should ensure management restrictions that are not less strict than those prescribed by the legal management regime of an existing or candidate protected area. When the management regime of a protected area in addition restricts other activities (visiting, hunting, fishing, collection of NTFPs and fires), the applicant should establish control over them.

The management regimes in **HCV 1.2–1.4** should be aimed at maintenance of characteristics of rare, threatened and endangered species habitats. The respective regimes should be developed on the basis of knowledge of biology of a particular species of high conservation value considering identified sites of conservation importance. For example, selection cuts (and even clearcuts) by themselves do not exert a threat to some wildlife species. However, the disturbance of animals, which accompanies harvesting activity, should be taken into account. In such cases, seasonal harvesting restriction shall be applied. Some species cannot be affected by harvesting (or winter harvesting) at all but require deadwood for their existence. For conservation of plants it will be sufficient to restrict management activities in buffer zones around their protected habitats.

When is not possible to prove that a particular type of harvesting does not threaten to species conservation, the precautionary approach shall be used that means than a strict conservation regime shall be established in the area.

To ensure preservation of **national level HCV 2** intact forest landscapes (IFL):

- 1. Wilderness areas inside IFL should be identified and completely protected from forestry activities and fragmentation by roads (strict conservation zones). The area of the strict conservation zone should be as large as possible under local social conditions. In case of an outstanding dispute of substantial magnitude, this area should be determined assessing all three components: ecological, social and economic. Economic and social values should also consider a potential value, e.g. perspectives for tourism development and significance of such development for local people to avoid missed profits.
- 2. In the rest of IFL (outside of strict conservation zones) the best available forestry technologies and practices with regard to conservation of biodiversity and forest ecosystem should be implemented. The introduction of the best available forestry technologies and practices can be gradual depending on existent legislation and possibilities of a particular enterprise. However, the environmentally responsible enterprise should have an approved program for their introduction, which is being implemented. Such technologies and practices may include:
- the use of harvesting techniques that mimic the natural dynamics of the forest in each type of forest or condition;
- the priority use of selection and narrow clear-strip cuts in forest, whose natural dynamics does not include stand-replacing disturbances;
- retention of key stand elements (individual trees, clumps of trees and snags) to ensure preservation of diversity of forest and mosaic of habitats;
- the use of technologies aimed at natural forest regeneration;
- the use of machinery and technologies that minimize the impact on soils and young growth and pollution of soil and streams.

The long-term conservation of reference areas identified as IFL implies establishment of a protected area. As an intermediate solution, until a final decision on protected area borders will be made, a logging moratorium can be announced or this land can be reserved by relevant governmental agencies as a candidate protected area.

In the rest of the area the following is required<sup>11</sup>:

- key biotopes (critical habitats) shall be identified and protected; and
- inventories of species and ecosystems that are rare or threatened in a particular region shall be conducted; identified sites should be protected.

In order to exclude further significant fragmentation, IFL should be considered when planning road construction.

The similar approach applies to **regional level HCV 2**. Different variants of zoning can be used, ranging from complete protection of the area to its subdivision into areas with different values. However, they should have the following in common:

- area and all dimensions of reference areas, in which all or the majority of management activities and fragmentation by roads and other communications are prohibited, should be big; and
- further significant fragmentation of such areas (i.e. dissection by permanent roads and other communications) should be prevented.

During harvesting the best available forestry technologies and practices with regard to conservation of biodiversity and forest ecosystem should be used.

The management of **HCV 3** should ensure the preservation of high conservation values (tree and overall species composition, spatial structures and natural dynamics) of rare, threatened or endangered ecosystems. The management regime should be developed on the basis of knowledge of biology of high conservation value ecosystems considering their borders. In most cases preservation of high conservation values require prohibition of all types of harvesting.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>10</sup> According to the *Declaration of Russian Non-governmental Conservation Organizations on the Conservation Values of Intact Forest Landscapes in Northern European Russia* adopted at the meeting of Russian non-governmental conservation organizations in Arkhangelsk, December 12 2005.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>11</sup> See previous footnote.

When it is not possible to prove that a particular harvesting technique does not threaten to conservation of rare, threatened and endangered ecosystems, the precautionary approach shall be used that means than a strict conservation regime or similar should be established.

The regulation of secondary forest use (collection of NTFPs and use for recreation) depends on the ecosystem type. Thus, a rare ecosystem of the Russian Far East spruce forest with Asian devil's club (*Oplopanax elatus*) shall be protected by prohibiting or restricting collection of the latter species (a federal-level red-listed species; the Red-data Book indicates that the species is threatened by collection for medicinal purposes and recommends to use it resources sustainably). In most rare ecosystems, visiting and collection of ornamental plants are permitted under condition that the use of fire is controlled.

It is advisable to include rare, threatened or endangered ecosystems in protected areas when necessary.

In general, the management regime in **HCV 4** corresponds to legal management restrictions of respective protective forests and OZU.

Sometimes there is a need to control thinning and other silvicultural operations performed by a forest management administration (lesnichestvo). Upon finding that commercial harvesting has occurred under the name of silvicultural operation, the relevant measures should be immediately applied.

The management regime in **HCV 5** and **6** should strongly depend on the needs of local communities. This requires wide scale consultations, whenever possible involving social technologies experts. The management regime in **HCV 5** often corresponds to legal management restrictions of respective protective forests and OZU, while that of **HCV 6** requires a stricter protection.

Other **categories of HCVFs** are understood as areas, whose high conservation value is undebatable, but which cannot be unambiguously referred to any existing HCVF category (or may simultaneously belong to several ones). The management regime for such areas should be developed on the basis of careful investigation of their high conservation values.

\*\*\*

In order to develop a management regime for HCVF, the enterprise should make the following steps:

- to identify and map HCVF;
- to collect information and describe attributes of high conservation values present in the area (e.g. local rare species, ecosystem functions and services, special significance for local communities);
- to develop a management regime (strict conservation, management restrictions or control over other activities);
- to choose a management type; and
- to consider HCVF location and regime in the forest management plan.

#### **Monitoring of HCVF**

Monitoring of HCVF is conducted to assess on a regular basis to what extent the maintenance of high conservation values is achieved. The condition of HCVF can be affected by the impact of either management activities (both of the enterprise itself and other organizations), or natural factors, such forest fires, pest outbreaks etc. The results of monitoring may require revision of the set of protection and/or management measures and correction of the forest management plan.

In areas for which strict conservation measures are proposed, monitoring of HCVF is the easiest, since it implies mainly keeping a track of records of changes in HCVF attributed to some dramatic natural events (massive windfalls, catastrophic fires etc.), long-term trends (e.g. changes in composition and condition of flora and fauna) and management activities of third parties (including illegal ones). The choice of monitoring method depends on the character of information being collected from foresters, hunters, fishermen etc. and enterprise's resources and can be based on:

- monitoring of forest condition using remote sensing materials;
- data on changes in forest land annually collected by district level forest management administration;
- field survey materials (zoological, botanical, forest pathology etc.); and
- continuous stationary scientific research.

In areas where management activities are restricted, monitoring of HCVF, besides aforementioned methods, presumes a wider array of monitoring methods and their greater thoroughness. Thus, it is necessary to assess how the implemented measures ensure the maintenance of high conservation values, both in short-term and long-term perspectives. For example, it should be learnt, whether harvesting leads to stronger windfall or mass die-off of trees, higher frequency of fires, noticeable changes in flora and fauna (e.g. looking at disappearance or appearance of certain indicator species) etc.

All information collected during monitoring of HCVF should be used to assess the efficiency of conservation measures with regard to the overall objective – to ensure maintenance of attributes of high conservation values as well as to assess the implemented management system with respect to biodiversity conservation in general.

Monitoring activities can be carried out by the enterprise itself, various governmental bodies (Federal Forestry Agency or environmental protection agency), research institutes and non-governmental conservation organizations in cooperation with enterprise. The forest manager shall consider the results of monitoring in the implementation of management activities for the current year, by correcting the set and parameters of activities, and to revise the forest management plan when necessary. Monitoring materials can be also used when developing a program on protection of HCVF, key biotopes etc. as well as in negotiations with NGOs and the forest management administration.

#### **References on HCVF**

- 1. Aksenov D., Dobrynin D., Dubinin M. et al. Atlas of Russia's Intact Forest Landscapes. Moscow: International Socio-Ecological Union; Washington DC: World Resources Institute, 2002. 186 p.
- 2. Aksenov D., Dobrynin D., Dubinin M. *et al.* Atlas of Russia's Intact Forest Landscapes [Atlas malonarushennykh lesnykh territoriy Rossii]. Moscow: International Socio-Ecological Union; Washington DC: World Resources Institute, 2003. 186 p. (In Russ.)
- 3. Aksenov D., Dubinin M., Karpachevskiy M. *et al.* Mapping High Conservation Value Forests of Primorskiy Kray, Russian Far East: Categories Important for Preservation of Flora and Vegetation [Vydelenie lesov vysokoy prirodookhrannoy tsennosti v Primorskom kraye. Kategorii, vazhnye dlya sokhranenya rastitelnogo pokrova]. Vladivostok–Moscow: Izd. MSoES, 2006. 186 p. (In Russ.)
- 4. Important Bird Areas in Asia. Key Sites for Conservation Series. Eds. Chan S., Crosby M.J., Islam M.Z. and Tordoff A.W. Cambridge: Birdlife, Birdlife Conservation Series 13, 2004. 297 p.
- 5. Important Bird Areas in Europe: Priority Sites for Conservation. Eds. Heath M.F. and Evans M.I. 2 vols. Cambridge: Birdlife, Birdlife Conservation Series 8, 2000. 866 p. (vol. 1), 791 p. (vol. 2).
- 6. Important Bird Areas of International Importance in European Russia [Klyuchevye ornitologicheskie territorii mezhdunarodnogo znacheniya v Evropeyskoy Rossii]. In: Klyuchevye ornitologicheskie territorii Rossii], vol. 1. Eds. T.V. Sviridova and V.A. Zubakin. Moscow: soyuz okhrany ptits Rossii, 2000. 702 p. (In Russ.)
- 7. Important Bird Areas of International Importance in Western Siberia [Klyuchevye ornitologicheskie territorii mezhdunarodnogo znacheniya v Zapadnoy Sibiri]. In: Klyuchevye ornitologicheskie territorii Rossii, vol. 2. Ed. S.A. Bukreev. Moscow: soyuz okhrany ptits Rossii, 2006. 336 p. (In Russ.)

- 8. Jennings S., Nussbaum R., Jadd H. and Evans T. High Conservation Value Forests: Toolkit [*Lesa vysokoy prirodookhrannoy tsennosti: prakticheskoe rukovodstvo*]. Moscow: 2005. 184 p. (In Russ.)
- 9. Olson D.M. and Dinerstein E. The Global 200: A Representation Approach to Conserving the Earth's Most Biologically Valuable Ecoregions. *Conservation Biology*, 1998, No. 12. pp. 502–515.
- 10. Pazhenkov A.S., Smelyanskiy I.Ya., Trofimova T.A. and Karyakin I.V. Ecological Network of the Republic of Bashkortostan [*Ekologicheskaya set Respubliki Bashkortostan*]. Moscow: IUCN, 2005. 198 p. (In Russ.)
- 11. Pristine Forests: Identification, Assessment and Management. Administrative Regulations of the Komi Republic [*Devstvennye lesa: vyyavlenie, otsenka, upravlenie. Normativno-pravovye akty Respubliki Komi*]. Syktyvkar: Serebryannaya taiga, 2004. 24 p. (In Russ.)
- 12. Skvortsov V.E. *et al.* Practical Guidebook for Forest Workers of Primorskiy Kray [*Prakticheskoe posobie dlya rabotnikov lesnogo kompleksa Primorskogo kraya*]. Vladivostok: WWF, 2006. (In Russ.).
- 13. Wetlands on the Ramsar Shadow List. In: Wetlands in Russia Vol. 3. Ed. V.G. Krivenko. Wetlands International Global Ser., №6, 2000. 490 p.
- 14. Wetlands of International Importance [Vodno-bolotnye ugodya mezhdunarodnogo znacheniya]. In: Vodno-bolotnye ugodya Rossii, vol. 1. Ed. V.G. Krivenko. Moscow: Wetlands International Publication, No. 47, 1998. 256 p. (In Russ.)
- 15. Wetlands on the Shadow List to the Ramsar Convention [Vodno-bolotnye ugodya, vnesennye v Perspektivny spisok Ramsarskoy konventsii]. In: Vodno-bolotnye ugodya Rossii, vol. 3. Ed. V.G. Krivenko. Moscow: Wetlands International Global Ser., No. 3, 2000. 490 p. (In Russ.).
- 16. Yaroshenko A.Yu., Potapov P.V. and Turubanova S.A. The Last Intact Forest Landscapes of Northern European Russia. Moscow; Greenpeace Russia, 2001. 75 p.
- 17. Yaroshenko A.Yu., Potapov P.V., Turubanova S.A. The Intact Forest Landscapes in Northern European Russia [Malonarushennye lesnye territorii Evropeyskogo Severa Rossii]. Moscow: Greenpeace Russia, 2001. 75 p. (In Russ.)

## **Annex F. Indigenous Peoples**

There are several definitions of indigenous peoples accepted in international and Russian practices applicable to this standard. Since 2000 in its interpretation of indigenous peoples FSC follows the Working definition adopted by the UN Working Group on Indigenous Peoples (UN, 1989): "The existing descendants of the peoples who inhabited the present territory of a country wholly or partially at the time when persons of a different culture or ethnic origin arrived there from other parts of the world, overcame them and, by conquest, settlement, or other means reduced them to a non-dominant or colonial situation; who today live more in conformity with their particular social, economic and cultural customs and traditions than with the institutions of the country of which they now form a part, under State structure which incorporates mainly the national, social and cultural characteristics of other segments of the population which are predominant" (FSC-AC, February 2000).

Since March 2002 FSC also included in its requirements the provisions of *ILO Convention No. 169 concerning Indigenous and Tribal Peoples in Independent Countries.* This convention defines as indigenous peoples and applies to:

- "(a) Tribal peoples in independent countries whose social, cultural and economic conditions distinguish them from other sections of the national community, and whose status is regulated wholly or partially by their own customs or traditions or by special laws or regulations;
- (b) Peoples in independent countries who are regarded as indigenous on account of their descent from the populations which inhabited the country, or a geographical region to which the country belongs, at the time of conquest or colonization or the establishment of present State boundaries and who, irrespective of their legal status, retain some or all of their own social, economic, cultural and political institutions.
- 2. Self-identification as indigenous or tribal shall be regarded as a fundamental criterion for determining the groups to which the provisions of this Convention apply.
- 3. The use of the term "peoples" in this Convention shall not be construed as having any implications as regards the rights which may attach to the term under international law."

This ILO convention is not ratified by Russia.

The Russian legislation contains only a notion of small-numbered indigenous peoples of Russia. The federal law (Art. 1) On Guaranties of the Rights of Small-numbered Indigenous Peoples of Russian Federation (1999) defines them in the following way: "Small-numbered indigenous peoples of Russian Federation (thereafter named small-numbered nations) are nations, which inhabit areas traditionally occupied by their ancestors, maintain traditional lifestyles, management systems and use of natural resource, whose numbers does not exceed 50 thousand peoples and who identify themselves as independent ethnic communities."

The Common List of Indigenous Small-numbered Peoples of Russia was approved by the Government of the Russian Federation No. 255 on March 24 2000. In accordance to the aforementioned parameters it contains 45 nations (Table F1). Besides that, some Russian regions have an own list of indigenous peoples.

Therefore, the Russian legislation on indigenous peoples does not apply to more numbered indigenous peoples, such as Buryats, Karels, Komi, Yakuts, Tuvans and other title nations of republics and autonomous okrugs of the Russian Federation. At the same time, many communities of these nations have traditional lifestyles and uses of natural resources. Furthermore, most of legal rights of indigenous peoples with respect to traditional use of natural resources apply only to indigenous small-numbered peoples of North, Siberia and the Russian Far East. Some small-numbered ethnic groups, which identify themselves as indigenous peoples, e.g. Komi-Izhems and Pomors, are also not listed in the aforementioned lists.

In this standard, indigenous peoples are understood as groups of people, which in the course of many generations, identify themselves as an independent ethno-cultural group (nation, ethnos, ethnic group or ethno-cultural group); are linked to a particular geographical region; and preserve

elements of their lifestyle based on traditional uses of natural resources (integrated management of natural resources, which in different combinations, includes animal husbandry, agriculture, hunting and trapping wildlife and the use of non-timber forest products, which are still of cultural importance for these communities).

Table F1. Common List of Indigenous Small-numbered Peoples of Russia\*

<b>Small-numbered</b>	Administrative region of the Russian Federation, in which lives small-
peoples of Russia	numbered peoples of Russia**
Abazins	Republic of Karachay–Cherkessia
Aleuts***	districts of Kamchatka Oblast, Koryak Autonomous Okrug
Alyutors***	Koryak Autonomous Okrug
Bisermän	Republic of Udmurtia
Chelkans***	Altay Republic
Chukchis***	Chukotka Autonomous Okrug, Koryak Autonomous Okrug
Chulyms***	Tomsk Oblast, Krasnoyarsk Kray
Chuvans***	Chukotka Autonomous Okrug, Magadan Oblast
Dolgans***	Taymyr (Dolgano-Nenets) Autonomous Okrug, districts of Krasnoyarsk
_	Kray, Republic of Sakha (Yakutia)
Enets***	Taymyr (Dolgano–Nenets) Autonomous Okrug
Eskimo***	Chukotka Autonomous Okrug, Koryak Autonomous Okrug
Evenks***	Republic of Sakha (Yakutia), Evenki Autonomous Okrug, districts of
	Krasnoyarsk Kray, Khabarovsk Kray, Amur Oblast, Sakhalin Oblast, Buryat
	Republic, Irkutsk Oblast, Chita Oblast, Tomsk Oblast, Tyumen Oblast
Evens***	Republic of Sakha (Yakutia), Khabarovsk Kray, Magadan Oblast, Chukotka
	Autonomous Okrug, Koryak Autonomous Okrug, districts of Kamchatka
	Oblast
Itelmens***	Koryak Autonomous Okrug, districts of Kamchatka Oblast, Magadan Oblast
Izhorians	Leningrad Oblast
Kamchadals***	districts of Kamchatka Oblast, Koryak Autonomous Okrug
Kereks***	Chukotka Autonomous Okrug
Kets***	Krasnoyarsk Kray
Khants***	Khanty-Mansi Autonomous Okrug, Yamalo-Nenets Autonomous Okrug,
	districts of Tyumen Oblast, Tomsk Oblast, Komi Republic
Koryaks***	Koryak Autonomous Okrug, districts of Kamchatka Oblast, Chukotka
	Autonomous Okrug, Magadan Oblast
Kumandins***	Altay Kray, Altay Republic, Kemerovo Oblast
Mansi***	Khanty–Mansi Autonomous Okrug, districts of Tyumen Oblast, Sverdlovsk
	Oblast, Komi Republic
Nağaybäks	Chelyabinsk Oblast
Nanais***	Khabarovsk Kray, Primorskiy Kray, Sakhalin Oblast
Negidals***	Khabarovsk Kray
Nenets***	Yamalo-Nenets Autonomous Okrug, Nenets Autonomous Okrug, districts of
	Arkhangelsk Oblast, Taymyr (Dolgano–Nenets) Autonomous Okrug,
	Khanty-Mansi Autonomous Okrug, Komi Republic
Nganasans***	Taymyr (Dolgano–Nenets) Autonomous Okrug, districts of Krasnoyarsk
	Kray
Nivkhs***	Khabarovsk Kray, Sakhalin Oblast
Orochs***	Khabarovsk Kray
Oroks (Ulta)***	Sakhalin Oblast
Sami***	Murmansk Oblast

<b>Small-numbered</b>	Administrative region of the Russian Federation, in which lives small-
peoples of Russia	numbered peoples of Russia**
Selkups***	Yamalo-Nenets Autonomous Okrug, districts of Tyumen Oblast, Tomsk
	Oblast, Krasnoyarsk Kray
Shapsugs	Krasnodar Kray
Shorians***	Kemerovo Oblast, Republic of Khakassia, Altay Republic
Soyots***	Buryat Republic
Tazs***	Primorskiy Kray
Telengits***	Altay Republic
Teleuts***	Kemerovo Oblast
Tofalars***	Irkutsk Oblast
Tubalars***	Altay Republic
Tuvans-	Tuva Republic
Todzhins***	
Udege***	Primorskiy Kray, Khabarovsk Kray
Ulchs***	Khabarovsk Kray
Veps***	Republic of Karelia, Leningrad Oblast
Yukaghirs***	Republic of Sakha (Yakutia), Magadan Oblast

<sup>\*</sup> Indigenous small-numbered peoples of the Republic of Dagestan are listed in the Order by the Government of the Russian Federation No. 236 on March 28 2001; this list was approved by the State Council of the Republic of Dagestan No. 191 on October 18 2000 On Peculiarities of the Implementation of the Federal Law On Guaranties of the Rights of Small-numbered Indigenous Peoples of Russian Federation in the Republic of Dagestan. This list is part of the Common List of Indigenous Small-numbered Peoples of Russia.

Therefore, this definition also applies to certain ethnic groups, such as century-old traditional communities of Russian descent (Pomors, Old-believers (staroobryadtsy) and Cossacks) and other groups with a specific culture and self-identification. Local communities of Buryats, Karels, Komi, Yakuts, Tuvans and other title nations of republics and autonomous okrugs of the Russian Federation, who have traditional lifestyles and uses of natural resources, should be also considered as indigenous peoples. The complexity of the ethnic composition and socio-cultural diversity of local communities occurring in Russia does not permit giving complete descriptions of all ethno-cultural groups. Therefore, the Principle 3 should be applied to any group, which identifies itself as an indigenous community.

Rights and interest of indigenous communities with respect to protection and use of natural resources in sites of special significance for indigenous peoples (**HCV 5** and **HCV 6**), except Criterion 3.3, are also covered by indicators 9.1.4, 9.1.5 and 9.3.9–9.3.11.

<sup>\*\*</sup> Names of the administrative regions of the Russian Federation are given in the order of decreasing number of a particular nation living at in the region.

<sup>\*\*\*</sup> Included in the *List of Indigenous Small-numbered Peoples of North, Siberia and the Far East of the Russian Federation* (decision by the Government of the Russian Federation No. 536-r on April 17 2006).

## **Annex G. Glossary**

**Afforestation:** Creation and planting of human-made forests in areas which have not been forests before.

Annual allowable cut (AAC): Annual quota of final felling (commercial harvesting), being calculated for district level forest management administration unit. It does not take into account wood harvested during silvicultural operations (thinning), salvage and other categories of cuts. At areas leased for wood harvesting instead of AAC the annual timber removals from final felling is used.

Annual timber removals: Annual allowable quota of commercial timber harvesting for a particular timber lease (concession). It is obtained by re-calculating the **allowable annual cut** assigned for the district level forest management administration unit considering information on forest blocks (kvartals) given into lease. It does not take account of timber removals during **silvicultural operations** (thinning) and salvage logging.

**Authorized representative of indigenous peoples (local community):** Persons or entities which represent interests of **indigenous peoples (local community)** in accordance with the laws of the Russian Federation.

**Biological control methods of pest management:** The use of living organisms or products derived from their activity (**biological control agents**) to prevent or reduce the damage to the forest by **pests**. The use of such methods does not lead to environment pollution and does not adversely affect on humans, plants and forest ecosystems and have continuous after-effect. In some cases, however, may lead to adverse implications, e.g. when using exotic entomophagous insects.

**Biological Control Agents:** Living organisms or products derived from their activity used to prevent or reduce the damage to the forest by **pests**. BCA make up the basis of biological control methods of pest management and are based on the use of entomophagous microorganisms (as bacterial preparations), entomophagous insects, insect feeding birds and mammals.

Chemical control methods of pest management: The use of pesticides to prevent or reduce the damage to the forest and timber by pests, forest diseases and weeds. Such methods the main tool of the pest management using chemicals. The wrong and unjustified use of such methods could exert adverse impact on useful flora and fauna (including vertebrate species), environment and humans.

**Certificate**: A document that certifies the conformity of **forest management** practiced by a forest management unit or forest enterprise to the FSC Principles and Criteria and gives the right to label products.

**Certification**: The procedure by which a third party gives written assurance that a product, process or service conforms to specified requirements (e.g. of the FSC Principles and Criteria).

**Clearcut**: Harvesting in a designated area with retention of individual trees and shrubs (groups of trees and shrubs) to ensure **forest regeneration**.

**Confidential information**: Information that cannot be disclosed or made public due to the fact that it:

- contains sensitive information that if made available could harm or even pose a threat to the existence of a site of high conservation value or to interests of **indigenous** or **local communities**;
- breaches the existing confidentiality agreements;
- contains information that is subject to existing copyright law and other forms of legal defense, including the intellectual property rights, defense of national security or public order, privacy laws and laws of protection of confidential information mechanisms associated with these types of legislation;
- contains information that would affect the applicant's competitiveness (e.g. detailed description of costs, revenues, etc.).

Conversion of forest land: Conversion of forest lands into other land categories with different management objectives in accordance to the Land code and the Federal Law on Land Conversion (e.g. in agricultural lands, urban lands, lands of protected nature areas etc.). In some cases, change of a land category may lead to irreversible loss of forest cover.

Critical habitat: See Key biotope.

**Customary rights**: Rights which result from a long series of habitual or customary actions, constantly repeated, which have, by such repetition and by uninterrupted acquiescence, acquired the force of a law within a geographical or sociological unit. However, in many cases, while being an effective rule, customary rights are not documented. Customary rights refer not to individual person but a group of people (community), tribe or nation.

**Harvest area:** A forest area assigned for wood harvesting.

**HCVF:** See **High Conservation Value Forests**.

**High Conservation Value Forests (HCVF):** Forests that possess one or more of the following attributes:

- a) Forest areas containing globally, regionally or nationally significant:
- Concentrations of biodiversity values (e.g. endemism, endangered species, refugia); and/or
- Large landscape level forests, contained within, or containing the management unit, where
  viable populations of most if not all naturally occurring species exist in natural patterns of
  distribution and abundance (see also Intact forest landscapes)
- b) Forest areas that are in or contain rare, threatened or endangered ecosystems
- c) Forest areas that provide basic services of nature in critical situations (e.g. watershed protection, erosion control)
- d) Forest areas fundamental to meeting basic needs of **local communities** (e.g. subsistence, health) and/or critical to **local communities**' traditional cultural identity (areas of cultural, ecological, economic or religious significance identified in cooperation with such **local communities**).

**Degraded lands**: Lands which lost their economic values or which have an adverse impact on the environment caused by disturbed soil, hydrological regime, and technogenic topography resulted from human activity and other qualitative changes of their state.

**Economically accessible forests**: Forests included in the exploitable **forest lands**, with exception of **economically inaccessible forests**.

**Economically inaccessible forests**: Forests in the exploitable **forest land** that have low growing stock (60 to 90 cubic meters per hectare depending on a region) or have been cut down more than 10 years ago, in which potential **harvest areas** are dispersed and have individual size of less than 25 hectares.

**Ecological expertise (ekologicheskaya ekspertiza, EE)**: An administrative procedure to **assess** that planned management and other activities conform with environmental requirements and to determine the permissibility of realization of the project under consideration in order to prevent the occurrence of potentially adverse effects of these activities and related social, economic and other consequences.

**Endangered species:** Any species which is in danger of extinction throughout all or a significant portion of its range or species which are under protection within the Russian Federation or its particular administrative regions.

**Endemic species:** Species of plants, animals and fungi, which occur only in this area (region or country) and nowhere globally.

**Exotic species:** An introduced species not native or endemic to the area in question (especially species from other continents). This standard does not consider **reintroduced species**, i.e. species that in historical times were present or grew at the area (e.g. noble broadleaf species that have disappeared from some regions of European Russia) and for which special restoration measures are used.

**Forest inventory**: Annual operative collection and processing of data on the Forest Fund of a forest enterprise, volume and quality of executed forest operations, and areas where forestry activity can be performed in a next year. In addition, as a rule, once a decade, forest inventory prepare a **forest management plan** which is based on analyze of the results of economic activities and changes in the Forest Fund.

**Forest lands**: Lands of the State Forest Fund, covered and non-covered with forest, designed for growing wood.

**Forest management**: Activities designed for maintenance and use of various forest functions which are carried on in accordance with the current laws and other regulations.

Forest management plan: Document approved by the enterprise that determines the strategy for use, conservation, protection and regeneration of forest and other resources and a detailed plan of management activities for coming years. The forest management plan is regularly revised. The document contains characteristics of forest resource, calculation and rationale for annual timber removals, locations of harvest areas by years, description of harvesting techniques, silvicultural operations and road construction activities etc. The FMP is developed on the basis forest inventory materials with consideration of available materials. Two types of FMP are recognized: lesokhozyaystvenny reglament and proekt osvoeniya lesov.

**Forest regeneration**: Natural regeneration of trees on harvested area or trees planted by a forest management unit or forest enterprise to ensure regeneration.

**Forest seed base**: A high-productive area of natural high-grade forest or **plantations** made for regular collection of seeds of important tree species with valuable hereditary and sowing qualities for a long time.

Imitation of natural dynamics of the forest (during harvesting): The system of adaptive forest management according to which the choice of harvesting techniques should strive to mimic the natural dynamics of a particular forest type and take into account composition and structure. For example, when harvesting in evenaged dark (spruce and fir) coniferous, mixed coniferous-broadleaf and broadleaf forests, whose development features the absence of fires (stand replacing disturbance), the preference should be given to selection cuts. In variants of dark coniferous stands with expressed tree generations, some narrow clear-strip cuts and small-size clearcuts can be used. (Note that broadleaf trees here mean noble broadleaf species like oak, ash, maple, elm and linden.) Within the framework of this approach it is not recommended to imitate natural catastrophic events, such as catastrophic fires which lead to the dieback of most of trees. Therefore, the rationale for the use of clearcut should be provided and the harvesting should include measure on biodiversity conservation. Thus, in coniferous and mixed coniferous-broadleaf stands with fire dynamics, seed trees in number sufficient to provide natural regeneration, small-size trees, key stand elements and key biotopes (e.g. small bogs, forest strips along the streams etc., see above) should be left untouched.

**Indigenous community** [obshchina]: A community of **indigenous peoples** or **local people** who have declared themselves such a community, or claimed their rights. Communities can be constituted by representatives of several ethnic groups with a similar lifestyle.

**Indigenous peoples**: Groups of people, which in the course of many generations, identify themselves as an independent ethno-cultural group (nation, ethnos, ethnic group or ethno-cultural group); linked to a particular geographical region; preserve elements of their lifestyle based on traditional uses of natural resources (integrated management of natural resources, which in different combinations, includes animal husbandry, agriculture, hunting and trapping wildlife and the use of non-timber forest products, which are still of cultural importance for these communities).

**Intact forest landscapes**: Large natural landscapes within the forest zone minimally disturbed by human activities. An intact forest landscape is a landscape greater than 50 thousand hectares in the forest zone that is whole and natural, undivided by infrastructure and almost entirely unaffected by human activities during the last 60 years.

**Key biotope (critical habitat)**: Habitats with high number (large populations) of **species** that are **rare**, **threatened**, **endangered**, care-demanding and vulnerable to disturbance and habitats that are critical for lifecycles of vertebrate species (e.g. nesting grounds, borrows, refugia, sites for concentration or permanent migration routes and foraging and feeding grounds. In most cases, in practice habitats with the high probability of non-accidental occurrence of **rare**, **threatened**, **endangered**, vulnerable and care-demanding species are identified. Such places are significantly simpler to identify (even for non-specialists) using indirect characteristics such as indicator species (habitats specialists) or biotope characteristics.

**Key stand elements:** Individual trees, their clumps and groups that are the key structures and substratum for **rare**, **threatened**, **endangered**, care-demanding and vulnerable to disturbance habitat specialists. Retention of such structures during **clearcut** (e.g. seed trees of **target species**; some old **non-target** broadleaf trees; trees with large bird nests, large cavity trees; veteran trees whose age noticeably exceeds the average age of the main canopy; tree species rare in this area; and large wind-resistant dying trees and snags) together with preservation of **key biotopes** helps to biodiversity conservation in **harvest areas**. At areas with a high groundwater table and in the neighborhood of wetlands it is recommended to leave standing wind resistant trees in order to partly preserve the stand transpiration capacity. The residual trees may make up to 10–20% of the preharvest growing stock.

**Legal rights:** A system of norms, rules and behavior based on the existing laws and regulations.

**Lesokhozyaystvenny reglament**: A **forest management plan** for a district level forest management administration unit (forestry (lesnichestvo), park forest (lesopark) for a revision period (not more than 10 years).

**Local communities** (**local people**): People inhabiting a particular area and who reside permanently or at least seasonally in settlements in this area from year to year.

**Long term (said of planning):** The length of time of several revision periods totaling more than a half of a cutting cycle for a commercial section or period of long-term lease (at the duration of lease not less than 49 years).

**Management section**: A structural and management unit of the **forest lands** which is a set of forest stands and non-forest lands of a forest enterprise with one dominant species and a common management purpose (pine, spruce, oak, beech etc.).

**Management unit** (with respect to forest resource: A set of **management sections** that have similar management objectives (coniferous, noble broadleaf, other broadleaf).

Narrow clear-strip cut: Clearcut made in strips less than 100 m wide.

**Non-target species**: Species which have no commercial value under particular management objectives.

**OVOS** (Environmental impact assessment): A procedure to reveal, analyze and take into account direct, indirect and other negative impacts on the environment of planned management and other activities in order to make decision whether they are permissible or not.

Other categories of cuts: Clearcuts made irrespectively of stand age in order to clear forest lands for various management purposes.

Outstanding disputes (of substantial magnitude involving a significant number of interests): An open conflict or dispute, which is characterized by confrontational points of view that involves:

- local rights holders, local forest workers, or local residents;
- the legal or customary (or traditional) rights of local communities and indigenous peoples;
- a range of issues and/or interests;
- potential impacts to the disputant(s) that are irreversible or cannot be mitigated; and
- are related to meeting the FSC Standards.

**OZU**: See Special protection forest patches.

**Pesticides:** Chemicals that are used to control/kill animals and forest diseases which harm the trees and shrubs, unwilling plants (weeds), dendrophagous animals. They can be chemical or biological in nature. Pesticides are the main tool of **chemical control methods of pest management**. Pesticides include insecticides, which kill insects, acaricides (for ticks), fungicides (for fungal diseases), bactericides (for bacterial diseases), herbicides (for plants) etc.

**Pests**: Animals, whose activity may lead to reduced increments and fruit-bearing of plants, to disturbance of plant regeneration and growth, to decline and death of trees and shrubs and to damage of forest products (mainly timber). Massive pest outbreaks may exert a serious adverse impact on forestry and **forest management**. Such organisms are often considered harmful, which is not totally correct, thus insects (besides exotic ones) constitute a typical component of natural forest ecosystems and provide maintenance of their natural development cycles.

**Plantation**: A comparatively large area of human-made stands designed for accelerated growth of trees and shrubs to produce timber products with specific technical characteristics. The priorities in plantation forestry are given to economic and technical characteristics. Thus, the rest stands of artificial origin are not plantations because they are made to mainly provide regeneration of forest vegetation characteristic of the relevant landscape. The priorities for establishing artificial stands are for ecological, silvicultural and recreational purposes. An area of stands of natural origin treated with intensive improvement cuttings or other operations aimed at changing their structure to yield merchantable wood of relevant assortments is classified as plantations.

**Proekt osvoeniya lesov:** A **forest management plan** for a lease area for a period of the lease, including a detailed plan of management activities for coming years (usually 10 years). POL is developed on the basis of **lesokhozyaystvenny reglament**.

**Protected sites**: In this standard forest areas that have legal forest management restrictions in accordance to their high conservation values or such areas that are in process of acquiring a relevant status or such areas for which there is a voluntary, documented and long-term commitment by the enterprise to observe the relevant management restrictions. Such areas may include existing and candidate protected areas, important bird areas of Russia, existing and candidate Ramsar sites, **protective forests, OZU**, legal plans of ecological network and other areas voluntarily set aside for conservation by the enterprise (e.g. **HCVF** or **representative samples of existing ecosystems** lacking a legal status.

**Protective forests**: legal categories of forests, whose ecological and/or social importance is higher than economical. The main purpose of management of such forests is to ensure conservation and maintenance of biodiversity and to perform ecosystem functions and services (protection of water and forest resources, maintaining human health and hygienic functions etc.). Therefore, management activities in such forest are restricted depending on their conservation value and functions. Forests receive a legal protective status during state forest inventories.

Rare species: Species of plants, animals and fungi with small numbers of individuals in a particular administrative region of the Russian Federation, region, country or globally due to different reasons (e.g. natural peculiarities or historical reasons).

Rare, threatened and endangered species habitats: Habitats where occur or potentially may occur rare, threatened and endangered species of plants, animals and fungi. In most cases in practice key biotopes (critical habitats) of such species are identified and protected.

Rare, threatened or endangered ecosystems: Ecosystems that are rare (i.e. occupies insignificant fraction of a particular landscape, region, natural zone or globally) due to various reasons (e.g. uniqueness of natural development or human agency). Therefore, rare ecosystems are generally vulnerable (threatened or endangered), i.e. can be totally lost as a result of a wide array destructive factors and even insignificant disturbance. There are no commonly accepted criteria to referring ecosystems to rare, threatened or endangered ecosystems.

Reintroduced species: See Exotic species.

**Relic species:** All plants, fungi, animals, which have preserved in an area since ancient times, when climate and environmental conditions were different in comparison to present.

**Representative samples of existing ecosystems**: A network of **protected sites**, which are functionally interconnected and provide conservation of flora and fauna, landscapes, ecosystems and habitats in applicant's the area. In practice this means that such a network should:

- include all types of ecosystems and landscapes occurring in the area (i.e. to be representative);
- provide preservation of regionally and locally rare, threatened or **endangered** types of **ecosystems** and landscapes;
- ensure settling and migration of species;
- serve a base for scientific research of natural processes in forests.

Functions of representative samples of existing ecosystems may perform existing protected areas and candidate areas, **protective forests**, relatively large **OZU**, including candidate areas for ecological networks, and voluntarily set aside forest areas.

**Rotation period**: The period of time between two consecutive **clearcuts**. If reforestation in a **harvest area** is carried out in the year following the **clearcut**, the rotation period and the age of **clearcut** coincide. If reforestation is carried out some years later, the rotation period exceeds the age of **clearcut** for respective years. If vital undergrowth remains in a cut area after harvesting, the rotation period is shorter than the age of **clearcut** for the age of remained undergrowth.

**Secondary forest uses**: Includes hay cutting, animal grazing, keeping beehives, collection of tree sap, wild fruits, berries, nut and mushrooms and other food, medicinal and technical raw materials, moss, forest litter, reed etc.

**Selection cut:** A timber harvesting method at which part of trees of certain age, size, quality and/or condition is periodically felled down.

**Short term (said of planning):** The length of time less than one revision period (10 years).

**Silvicultural operations**: Technical and organizational measures designed for planting, reforestation, protection of exploitable and **protective forests**, increasing productivity and protective attributes.

**Special protection forest patches (OZU)**: Forest sites that perform significant protective functions or have special management functions with management restrictions. OZU are identified in **protective**, exploitable and reserved **forests**. **Clearcuts** in OZU are usually prohibited.

**Stakeholder**: An individual or organization whose economic, social, spiritual or conservation-oriented interests can be positively or negatively affected as a result of **forest management**. The stakeholder may also influence the preparation for **certification** and its results.

**Target species**: Tree species intended for commercial harvesting.

**Threatened species:** Species whose numbers are permanently declining so that it is likely to become **endangered species** in the foreseeable future or species which are under protection within the Russian Federation or its particular administrative regions.

**Traditional rights**: A variant of **customary rights**. Originally traditional rights and traditional legal systems are characteristics of "non-state" societies. However, they could be still in effect nowadays. The custom can become a norm after it has been recognized as such by a known ethnic group, tribe etc.

**Traditional use of natural resources**: A specific integrated system for management of natural resources, which in different combinations, includes animal husbandry, agriculture, hunting and trapping wildlife and the use of non-timber forest products, which are still of cultural importance for **indigenous communities**.

**Water protective zones:** Protective riparian zones along the rivers, lakes, reservoirs and other water bodies that have a special regime of management and management restrictions to prevent pollution, littering, silting, and exhaustion of water bodies as well as to protect habitats of plants and animals. It is established in accordance with the Water Code of the Russian Federation.

**Wide clear-strip cut**: **Clearcut** made in strips more than 100 m wide; it is considered large if an actual cutting area is 10 to 50 ha and more.

#### **Annex H. Certification Terms**

Definitions of the terms below are taken from the FSC Glossary of Terms (2000). They are cited here to explain better terms used in the FSC Standards.

**Criterion:** A means of judging whether or not a Principle (of Forest Management) has been fulfilled.

**Forest Stewardship Standard:** The normative document which specifies the requirements with which a forest management enterprise must conform in order to obtain FSC certification. Such a standard must include the exact language of the FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship, together with the additional indicators necessary to permit implementation at the level of the forest management unit.

**FSC Principles and Criteria:** The 10 Principles and 56 associated Criteria specified in the document *FSC Principles and Criteria of Forest Stewardship*.

**Indicator:** A quantitative or qualitative variable which can be measured or described, and which provides a means of judging whether a forest management unit complies with the requirements of an FSC Criterion. Indicators and the associated thresholds thereby define the requirements for responsible forest management at the level of the forest management unit and are the primary basis of forest evaluation.

**Means of verification:** A potential source of information or evidence that allows an auditor to evaluate compliance with an indicator

**Non-compliance with a Forest Stewardship Standard:** Failure to meet the threshold requirement(s) of an indicator of a Forest Stewardship Standard. Such non-compliance may be considered "minor" or "major":

Minor non-compliance with a Forest Stewardship Standard: A non-compliance may be considered minor if:

- it is a temporary lapse, or
- it is unusual/ non-systematic, or
- the impacts of the non-compliance are limited in their temporal and spatial scale, and
- prompt corrective action has been taken to ensure that it will not be repeated, and
- it does not result in a fundamental failure to achieve the objective of the relevant FSC Criterion.

**Major non-compliance with a Forest Stewardship Standard:** A non-compliance shall be considered major if, either alone or in combination with further non-compliances of other indicators, it results in, or is likely to result in a fundamental failure to achieve the objective of the relevant FSC Criterion in the Forest Management Unit(s) within the scope of the evaluation. Such fundamental failure shall be indicated by non-compliances which:

- continue over a long period of time, or,
- are repeated or systematic1, or
- affect a wide area, or
- are not corrected or adequately responded to by the forest managers once they have been identified.

**Principle:** An essential rule or element; in FSC's case, of forest stewardship.

# Annex I. List of Indicators Non-compliance to which Should Mean that an FSC Certificate Cannot Be Issued (List of Major Non-compliances for Certification)

Criteria	Main Provisions of Indicators
1.1	1.1.2. Enterprise's forest management activities are in compliance with laws
1.2	1.2.2. There is evidence that all applicable and prescribed fees, royalties, taxes and other charges are paid as required and promptly.  1.2.3. There is evidence that all wages and salaries prescribed by laws, regulations, forestry tariff agreements, collective and work agreements are paid to the staff fully and promptly
1.5	1.5.1. There is a system of measures to reveal, document and prevent illegal harvesting, illegal seizure of land, illegal construction and other illegal and unauthorized activities at the area.  1.5.2. The enterprise jointly with the relevant agencies implements the respective measures
1.6	<ul><li>1.6.1. The enterprise has a statement of commitment to FSC Principles and Criteria.</li><li>1.6.2. The FSC Principles and Criteria are being explained to staff</li></ul>
2.2	<ul> <li>2.2.1. Local communities with legal or customary (including traditional) rights to use forest resources are identified.</li> <li>2.2.2. Legal or customary (including traditional) tenure or use rights of local communities to the forest resources (such as mushroom and berry collection, recreation, hunting and fishing sites) are recognized in forest management planning (e.g. through public hearings).</li> <li>2.2.3. Local communities are given the possibility to take part in control over forestry operations</li> </ul>
2.3	2.3.3. Solutions with regard to outstanding disputes are achieved that are acceptable for all affected parties
3.1	3.1.1. All indigenous peoples practicing traditional use of natural resources in the forest management area and having declared themselves as such are determined. 3.1.4. The enterprise has obtained a written agreement from local indigenous communities that their interests and concerns with regard to the use of the forest resources in the area are incorporated into the forest management plan. 3.1.8. There are no outstanding disputes between the enterprise and indigenous peoples
3.3	3.3.1. Sites of special cultural, ecological, economic or religious significance for indigenous peoples have been identified in cooperation with them and recognized. 3.3.3. Sites of special cultural, ecological, economic or religious significance, considering consultations with indigenous peoples, are protected and/or have special management restrictions
4.1	4.1.1. All other conditions being equal, the enterprise gives employment priority to workers from local communities. The employment of workers from other regions of Russia and other countries should be justified
4.2	<ul> <li>4.2.3. Staff are familiar with health and safety rules.</li> <li>4.2.8. Staff are trained in work safety measures and tested on knowledge of health and safety requirements.</li> <li>4.2.9. The enterprise provides forest workers with certified individual safety equipment in accordance with legal requirements, but not lower than requirements of <i>ILO Code of Practice on Safety and Health in Forestry Work</i>, 1998) and FSC-POL-30-401 <i>FSC Certification and the ILO Conventions</i>.</li> <li>4.2.10. There is a system to supervise observation of the requirements of health and safety regulations and use of individual safety equipment</li> </ul>

П	
4.3	4.3.2. Conditions of the tariff agreement for the forest industries of the Russian Federation are observed. In particular the enterprise has made a collective labor agreement and individual contracts and/or labor agreements with employee. 4.3.3. The are no disputes of substantial magnitude involving employees and enterprise managers
4.5	4.5.3. There are no disputes of substantial magnitude between the enterprise and local communities
5.1	<ul> <li>5.1.1. The enterprise has the resources to implement the forest management plan and all associated management activities (in particular harvesting, road construction, forest tending, forest protection and monitoring, identification and protection of HCVF, key biotopes).</li> <li>5.1.2. The management activities are economically sustainable and capable of providing a level of investment sufficient to ensure the survival of the organization in long term, while taking into account all environmental, social and operational expenditures.</li> <li>5.1.3. The enterprise allocates funding for silvicultural operations and forest fire protection and regeneration measures</li> </ul>
5.5	<ul> <li>5.5.1. Protective zones are established along all water streams, lakes and bogs (high moors); their dimensions are not smaller than prescribed by the federal laws.</li> <li>5.5.4. Forest operations within water protective zones along water streams of all types (protective forests and OZU) do not undermine the ecological value of these territories</li> </ul>
5.6	<ul> <li>5.6.1. The annual allowable cut (AAC) and total expected annual timber removals are determined by forest groups, management units and management sections.</li> <li>5.6.2. The following volumes of timber are excluded from the applicable annual allowable cut:</li> <li>harvesting of which is prohibited or restricted by the regime of protected sites;</li> <li>harvesting of which is permitted but would not be possible due to economic inaccessibility or insufficient growing stock (economically inaccessible forests).</li> <li>5.6.3. Annual timber removals for each management section should not lead to reduction of the yield in the short or long term, neither overall, nor for economically accessible forests</li> </ul>
6.1	6.1.1. The environmental impact assessment (OVOS) and/or State Environmental Expertise (ekologicheslaya ekspertiza, EE) for the forest management plan has been conducted, taking into consideration the unique and/ or protected resources of the management area
6.2	<ul> <li>6.2.5. The enterprise has developed a system of measures for protection of key biotopes of rare, threatened and endangered species.</li> <li>6.2.6. The enterprise implements measures for the protection of rare, threatened and endangered species in protected sites and voluntarily provides protection of newly identified key biotopes</li> </ul>

	6.3.6. The enterprise has a program to switch over from large-size clearcuts to narrow clear-strip cuts and/or selection cuts in relevant forest types.
	6.3.7. The respective program is being implemented.
	6.3.8. Clearcuts should be implemented leaving residual trees (trees and their groups,
	or key stand elements) that are wind resistant and do not create a safety hazard at
	forestry operations), especially if their logging and removal are not justified for
	commercial and sanitary reasons. Residual trees should represent the following:
6.3	seed trees of target management species;
	old trees of non-commercial species;
	large trees with holes;
	trees with large bird nests;
	veteran trees whose age noticeably exceeds the average age of the main canopy;
	tree species rare in this area;
	wind resistant dying trees and snags located at the distance from roads, landings as
	well as such trees left within clumps and groups
	6.4.2. Additional representative samples of existing ecosystems are being identified
<i>c</i> 4	based on the gap analysis of the protected sites network at a landscape level (district
6.4	level forest management administration unit).
	6.4.5. Identified representative samples of existing ecosystems are protected by
	regimes tailored to their assets or such a regime is proposed
6.5	6.5.2. Staff are aware of the respective regulations and operating guidelines and are
	trained to implement them  6.6.2 Postigides (chamicals used to control pasts) are used only if other non-chamicals
	6.6.2. Pesticides (chemicals used to control pests) are used only if other non-chemical
6.6	methods of pest management have appeared to be ineffective.
	6.6.3. Pesticides (chemicals used to control pests) are used only by authorization of a
	relevant governmental agency according to administrative regulations for their use
6.7	6.7.1. Chemicals, containers, liquid and solid non-organic wastes, including fuel, oil
0.7	and ignitable liquids are stored and managed in line with applicable administrative regulations
	6.10.3. The enterprise does not convert high conservation value forests to plantations.
	6.10.4. The enterprise does not initiate conversion of HCVF to lands of other
	categories, whose function cannot guarantee preservation of forest cover in long term
6.10	(except construction of roads required for access).
0.10	6.10.5. The enterprise undertakes efforts to prevent such conversion from occurring,
	when it corresponds to official plans of development of the area (housing, road
	construction etc.), especially when it is not supported by local communities
	7.1.1. The forest management plan formulates long-term objectives of forest
7.1	management for a rotation period and describes their implementation methods for the
	next 40 years or at least the duration of lease
	7.2.2. The forest management plan is revised (not less than once in 5–10 years) to
7.0	take into account the results of monitoring of changing environmental, social and
7.2	economic circumstances as well as new scientific and technical information consistent
	with Criterion 8.4
7.4	7.4.1. The primary elements of the forest management plan (including those listed in
7.4	Criterion 7.1) except confidential information are available to public
	8.1.1. The enterprise has a documented monitoring program, which describes
8.1	parameters to be monitored (consistent with the requirements of Criterion 8.2) and the
	frequency, procedures and responsibility for monitoring as well as the procedure for
	the use of data collected by independent organizations
8.2	8.2.14. Results of research and monitoring activities are documented as reports

n e	
8.3	8.3.1. The enterprise has a procedure that permits it to trace each forest product from its origin to the point of sale (chain-of-custody)
8.5	8.5.1. The enterprise produces and makes available to the public a summary of the results of forest management monitoring, except confidential information in consistence with Criterion 8.2
9.1	9.1.2. It is determined whether the given forest area is part of a large forest landscape minimally disturbed by human agency (or contains such a landscape)
9.2	9.2.1. The enterprise has conducted wide and open consultations with stakeholders to identify HCVF and determine measures for their protection and management. 9.2.2. With involvement of stakeholders and on the basis of information in 9.2.1 criteria for identification and/or maps of HCVF and a set of measures for HCVF protection and management have been prepared
9.3	9.3.4. Large forest landscapes minimally disturbed by human agency are conserved. 9.3.5. In cases when a large forest landscape minimally disturbed by human agency cannot be completely conserved due to specific local social conditions, strict conservation zones completely excluded from road and forestry development activities shall be established at part of its area. Such zones should be surrounded with buffer zones where best available forestry technologies and practices with regard to conservation of biodiversity and forest ecosystem are implemented. 9.3.6. Conservation and management regimes of strict conservation zones and buffer zones, respectively, are observed